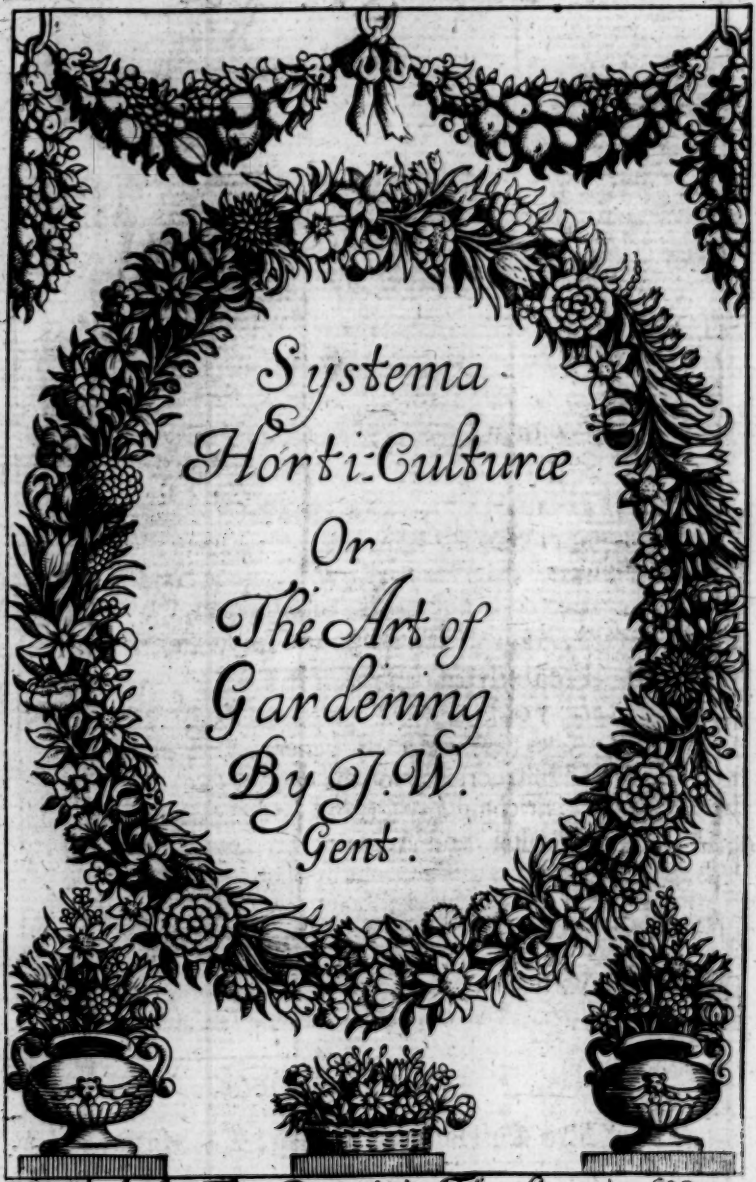
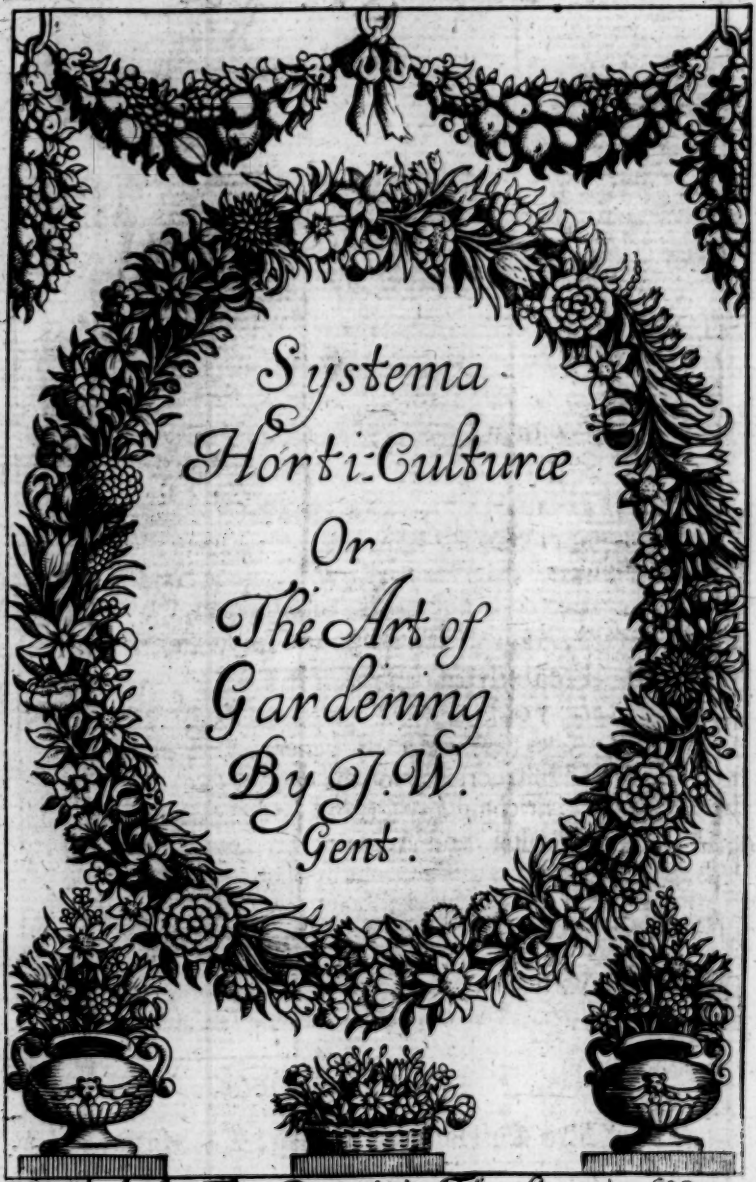


Printed for Tho: Dring in Fleetstreet. 1668.



Printed for Tho: Dring in Fleetstreet. 1668.

Systema Horti-culturæ:

OR,

The Art of Gardening.

In Three Books.

The I. Treateth of the Excellency, Scituation, Soil, Form, Walks, Arbours, Springs, Fountains, Water-works, Grotto's, Statues, and other Ornaments of Gardens, with many Rules, and Directions, concerning the same.

The II. Treateth of all sorts of Trees planted for Ornament of Shade, Winter-Greens, Flower-Trees, and Flowers, that are propagated or preserv'd in the Gardens of the best Florists, and the best Ways and Methods of Raising, Planting, and Improving them.

The III. Treateth of the Kitchin Garden, and of the variety of Plants propagated for Food, or for any Culinary Uses: With many general and particular Rules, and Instructions, for the making Hot Beds, altering and enriching any sort of Garden ground, Watering, Cleansing, and Adapting all sorts of Earth to the various Plants that are usually planted therein. To the great Improvement of every sort of Land, as well for Use and Profit, as for Ornament and Delight.

Illustrated with Sculptures, representing the Form of Gardens, according to the newest Models.

By *J. Woolridge*, Gent.

The Third Edition, with large Additions.

London: Printed for *Tho. Dring*, at the *Harrow* over against the *Inner-Temple*-Gate in *Fleetstreet*. 1688.

36641

Sept. 22, 1926.

THE PREFACE TO THE READER.

ARTS as well as *Habits*, are subject to that Fate of being in Mode, as might be instanced in several, besides this curious Art of *Horticulture*: which never declines when once it is become National, only varies in Form, according to the several temporary Humours of such that place their Oblectations in it. As for that part of *Gardening*, which is for the propagation of Trees for Pleasure, and beautifying Seats with vegetative Ornaments, scarce any part of the World, but estimates it a more than ordinary value. As for that part which is for *Flora's* use, the extream hot or cold parts are little adapted to it, those in the temperate Zone the most: For these lustrious Beauties affect not *Sol's* scorching rays, nor can their tender lovely Faces endure *Hyems's* too great severity, yet of the two extreams, the cold is the most tolerable, there being naturally more Flowers in the Meadows of the *Russian* Territories, than in those of *Guinea*.

But as for that part that relates to Esculent Plants, all Nations delight in it for the raising of such that are most proper for their Climate. Nature it self hath directed us where, and in what parts *Gardens* are to be planted with advantage, having spontaneously exposed to our view many curious Plants; which made *Varro* to say, *Divina natura dedit agros:* which is in effect, that divine Nature hath indicated unto us those Grounds that are fit for these uses: There rests only our Care and Industry to Till and Manure them, which was an Exercise appropriated unto us from the beginning. That our *English* Soyl then is generally fit for all these Uses, may appear from its aptness to produce naturally so great variety of Trees for Beauty and Shade, Flowers for Delight, and edible Plants also if they are sown in it; which is a sufficient encouragement for the Ingenious farther to prosecute this Art, which is of late years much improved in every part thereof. It was not long since that our choicest Avenues were first planted with those Ornamental Shades that now are become common, and that our best *Gardens* were only worthy of those natural Beauties that now flourish in every ordinary *Parlr*: Many of our now vulgar Dishes of *Tillage*, also, were but lately esteem'd as Rarities. And as this *Art* hath with its Subjects encreased of late years; so have the Instructions or Treatises, written to that effect, been multiplied. The affections of our Countrymen so naturally tending that way, have given

ven great encouragement to ſuch Publications, ſome whereof are very large and voluminous; others there are that are more accurt, and treat only of ſome particular Plants, and ways of ordering them. And as the Art it ſelf was at firſt lame, ſo have the Directions for its Improvement been; that if an inquiſitive Perſon deſires to be informed of the different Ways, Methods, or Means to order his *Garden*, &c. he muſt procure many ſeveral Tracts, and thoſe differing very much in their Rules and Preſcriptions the one from the other, and delivering many fabulous Stories, and directing you in erroneous ways, affirming them to be true that are meerly ſuppoſitious; ſome of them are only tranſlated out of other Languages, which were written for other Countries, whoſe *Horti-culture* (as their Climate) varies very much from ours. All which Inconveniences I have here endeavoured to avoid, by contracting into a ſmall Pocket-Volume, the Names of the moſt and principal kinds of Ornamental Trees and Flowers, with their proper Ways and Methods of ordering; and an account of all ſuch Eſculent Plants that are here uſually planted for culinary uſes: Together with the Method and Manner of ſelecting Grounds for *Gardens*, and the making, forming, and adorning them; and the improving, preſerving, altering or renewing the ſeveral ſorts of Earths, for all hortulane Plants, wherein as near as may be I have not troubled you with unneceſſary, inſignificant, uſeleſs, nor

falſe Directions; but have inſerted only ſuch that either I have actually experimented to be true, or have them from Perſons or Authors of good repute; or that are deduced from ſolid Principles. Alſo I have not ſwell'd this ſmall Tract, nor troubled your patience, with the many unneceſſary Names nor Characters of the various ſpecies of Flowers, and ſeveral other Plants; but nominated the more principal; the other being rather to be ſelected when in their prime by your Eye, than confided in from lame Deſcriptions. It is better to truſt to the integrity of a *Gardener*, than ſuch Directions that are uſually written, and ſeem to emblazon the Fame of a poor ſimple Flower, which when you ſee its higheſt luſtre in the beſt part of your *Garden*, (as by the deſcription and the price you gave for it, it ſhould deſerve) you are ready to remove it to the moſt abject place of your Groves. It may be objected, that there are many things in this Treatiſe that have been formerly written of, and therefore it ſeems to be ſuperfluous. It is true, very able Pens have written of this Subject; but they themſelves could not write without mentioning ſome things, and thoſe not few, that had been publiſhed before: It being very rare to find a Treatiſe in this Age, wholly of a new Subject; and any would eſteem it a grand deficiency in the improvement of this Art, if none ſhould have written of it ſince Mr. *Parkinſon*, Sir *Hugh Platt*, *Meager*, and ſeveral others, becauſe theſe had written before

on

on the ſame Subject. I hope therefore that this Objection will have no place againſt this Tract, the rather, becauſe it hath the Characters (that Mr. *Auſtin* hath propoſed in his Epiſtle Dedicatory, before his *Treatiſe of Fruit-Trees*) that Books of this nature ſhould have, Viz. 1. *That they be of ſmall Bulk and Price*, wherein I hope I have conformed, conſidering the variety of Matter herein Diſcourſed of. 2. *That the Stile be plain, and ſuited to the Vulgar:* In this I am ſure I have not tranſgreſſed; for I have wav'd as near as I could, all hard Words, and intricate Expreſſions (now in Mode) not in any wiſe ſuitable to this plain, honeſt, and ruſtick Employment. 3. *That theſe Books for Inſtruction, be Experimental:* As to this propoſal I have exactly obſerved it. You will alſo find ſeveral Matters here treated of, that have not as yet been mentioned in any Hortulane Tracts, and many Experiments very uſeful and beneficial, that were never made publick before. My principal deſign being not only to excite or animate ſuch that have fair Eſtates, and pleaſant Seats in the Country, to adorn and beautifie them; but to encourage the honeſt and plain Countryman in the improvement of his Ville, by enlarging the bounds and limits of his *Gardens*, as well as his Orchards, for the encreaſe of ſuch Eſculent Plants that may be uſeful and beneficial to himſelf and his Neighbors. Many there are in this Kingdom, that out of ſmall portions of Land, have by their Induſtry and Ingenuity in this very way of Improvement,

maintained themſelves and their Families, and acquired over and above wherewith to enlarge their Poſſeſſions. Several parts beyond the Seas, in *Holland*, *Flanders*, *France*, *Switzerland*, (of a near temperature of Air with us) can ſhew multitudes of Examples of this nature: *Italy* alſo in *Pliny*'s time, now the *Garden* of the World, was then improvable by this way of Tillage: As appears by that Hiſtory of *C. Furius Creſinus*, who out of a ſmall piece of ground raiſed more advantage, than his Neighbours out of their greater Poſſeſſions; but then not without the Imputation of Sorcery, ſuch was the Ignorance and Envy of that Age.

In this Country, in many places, Ignorance, Sloth, and Envy, are great impediments to this way of Improvement; no Country in the World being without ſome perſons fraught with lazy and envious Humors. Therefore we cannot be exempt from them, the beſt of Airs naturally nouriſhing the worſt of Animals, and the beſt of *Gardens* naturally producing the worſt of Weeds.

As for ſlothful men, they are the greateſt burthen to themſelves; but envious men, although they are ſo great an affliction to themſelves, (as *Horace* obſerved, that the *Sicilian* Tyrants never invented the like Torment) yet are they alſo the worſt Neighbors to good Husbandry, not only to the conſtant depraving the endeavours and ingenuity of the Induſtrious, but uſing all means they can to impede or prevent their proſperity: Like unto him that poyſoned

ſoned the Flowers in his own *Garden*, becauſe his Neighbor's Bees ſhould get no more Honey from them. Againſt ſuch as theſe every ingenious and induſtrious man ought to be well provided, with a competent proportion of patience and diſcretion, and not to be diſcouraged from proſecuting his intentions of improving his Ville, either by this way here propoſed, or by ſome of the ways formerly treated of for the planting of Fruits, or ſome other ways of Husbandry more advantageous than the old beaten way, ſo much by ſome contended for, there being no Land, eſpecially the ſmaller Farms, but is capable of improvement by ſome of thoſe Methods propoſed: Although I know that there are many that contend for the ancient way of Husbandry, and living upon our own Growths and Manufactures, as of old we have done, ſlighting and contemning the Improvements that are daily made in all manner of Husbandry and *Horti-culture*, and in all Mechanick Arts and Manufactures, ſeeming to emulate the felicity of former Ages, not conſidering the great mutations that are made in the World, as well in the various Occupations and Exerciſes of men, as in things of higher Natures. Many new Arts are diſcovered, and new ways of Trade, not only to encreaſe Manufactures, but to facilitate the great labour and expence men are put unto in the vulgar method of uſing them, of which very little hath hitherto been written, and of which (as time and opportunity ſhall favour me) I intend

Vide Virtuosum Britannicum. Syſtema Agriculture.

tend

tend to diſcourſe particularly, (having made a thorough ſcrutiny into many Trades, Arts, and Occupations, to diſcover the great imperfections and defects of them.) Which may be of great uſe to the advancement of Trade, and and to the converting the Labour and Induſtry of the People of this Nation, and their Beaſts of Labour to the greateſt advantage, there being nothing more wanting in this Nation than Hands to work up, and People to manage the great plenty of Materials *England* affords. Not that I will propoſe Conjectures and Probabilities for real Experiments and Inventions, gain Priviledges for their ſole uſe, and leave others at their own coſt and pains, to diſcover the Truths and Errors of them, and if they prove advantagious, to engroſs the profit to my ſelf, as ſeveral have lately done: But faithfully to convince the Impartial of former defects, and moſt apt ways to improve ſuch Mechanick Arts and Deſigns, that there may be as well an Improvement of the Manufactures and Mechanick Arts, that are operated out of our own Growths and Productions, as well as an encreaſe of ſuch Growths and Productions themſelves, all conducing to the Honour, Reputation, Strength, and Advantage of this Nation. Many have ſet to their helping hands to ſeveral parts of that deſign, but rather by way of Propoſals or Encouragements (which have not been altogether vain and uſeleſs) others by irregular and unſucceſsful Attempts, by which means ſome light hath been given to other

other things that have not proved unuſeful: As it is obſerved that thoſe that attempt the Philoſophers Stone, often fail of their end, yet they diſcover many rare things of Uſe and Delight. Many Attempts within theſe forty years have been made to keep Bees, (thoſe profitable Inſects) in wooden Caſes, and thereby annually to take their Honey, and yet preſerve their Lives: Although the Invention, or rather Conceit, hath not yet ſucceeded, yet hath the hopes of Gain prompted many to ſtock themſelves with Bees, which deſign is now more likely than ever to be effected; many ingenious men having undertaken at their great coſt and pains theſe two laſt years, and are yet upon their Experiments, to ſee the end of it: Very much to the Reputation and Advantage of him that gives them leave ſo to do.

There are ſeveral Objections may be raiſed againſt Improvement of Lands by *Garden*-Tillage: Some of them I ſhall take notice of in the enſuing Tract; the other are ſo ſlight, that they are not worthy the mentioning, all ſeeming to proceed from the ſame principles, as thoſe have that would not that their Neighbours ſhould breed Cattel at an eaſie rate, to hinder them from ſelling their own at a dear rate, and that would not have the Farmers that live on the dry Lands, ſow any *Clover*, St. *Foyn*, or ſuch like; becauſe the Productions of their lower and richer Lands ſhould yield them the greater price, endeavouring to reduce all places to their old natural way of Husbandry,

all

all Lands to yield no other Commodity, than what it will ſpontaneouſly produce, deſpiſing Art and Induſtry, deeming them as Innovations. Nevertheleſs I hope I may excuſe theſe perſons, being our own Countrymen, from ſuch ſtupid Ignorance, and impute it to their Intereſt which thus byaſſeth their Judgments, and puts them ſometimes to the charge of a Conteſt, which their Ignorance only would never provoke them to.

J. W.

THE

The TABLE OF CHAPTERS and SECTIONS.

LIB. I.

Page

OF Gardens *of Pleaſure, and the ſolid Ornaments thereof.* 1

Chap. I. *Of the Scituation and Soils of a* Garden, *and their Improvements.* 7

Sect. 1. *Of the Scituation of a* Garden. ibid.

2. *Of the different and moſt natural Soils for* Gardens. 9

3. *Of the Improvement of ſuch Soils.* 10

Chap. II. *Of the Form of a* Garden, *and its Fencing and Encloſing.* 18

Sect. 1. *Of the Form of a* Garden. ibid.

2. *Of Fences and Incloſures to a* Garden. 19

Chap. III. *Of the Walks, Arbours, and places of Repoſe in* Gardens. 27

Sect. 1. *Of Walks and Materials for them.* ib.

2. *Of Arbors and Places of Repoſe.* 32

Chap. IV. *Of Springs, Rivers, Fountains, Water-works, and Grotto's neceſſary for a* Garden. 37

Sect.

Sect. 1. *Of Springs.* 38
2. *Of Rivers.* 40
3. *Of Fountains.* 43
4. *Of Water-works.* 46
5. *Of Grotto's.* 51
Chap. V. *Of Statues, Obelisks, Dials, and other inveget ative Ornaments.* 54

LIB. II.

OF the divers *Trees, Flowers, and Plants, that beautifie and adorn a* Garden. 58
Chap. I. *Of Trees for Ornament and Shade.* 59
Sect. 1. *Of Winter-Greens.* 59
2. *Of Variegated or Gilded leafed Plants.* 66
3. *Of Trees propagated for their beauty and shade.* 71
4. *Of the propagating and planting the said Trees.* 76
Chap. II. *Of Flower-Trees.* 78
Sect. 1. *Of the various kinds of Roses.* 79
2. *Of ordering of Rose-Trees.* 83
3. *Of divers other Flower-bearing-Trees.* 85
Chap. III. *Of bulbous-rooted Flowers.* 92
Sect. 1. *Of Tulips.* ib.
2. *Of Hyacinths and Starflowers.* 97
3. *Of Daffodils.* 98
4. *Of Lillies.* 99
5. *Of Saffron Flowers.* 101
6. *Of several other bulbous-rooted Flowers.* 102
7. *Of the Iris, Bulbous and Tuberose.* 104

Chap. IV. *Of Tuberose-rooted Flowers.* 106
Sect. *Of Anemones.* ib.
2. *Of Peonies.* 111
Chap. V. *Of divers other select Flowers.* 112
Sect. 1. *Of Gilliflowers.* ib.
2. *Of Stock-Gilliflowers, and Wall-flowers.* 118
3. *Of Auricula's, Cowslips, and Primroses.* 122
4. *Of the Lilly of the Valley and Hellebor.* 124
5. *Of the Hepatica, Gentianella, and Dittany.* 125
Chap. VI. *Of Flowers raised only from Seed.* 126
Chap. VII. *Of some more vulgar Flowers.* 131
Chap. VIII. *Of such tender Exotick Trees, Flowers, and Plants, that require the Florists care to preserve them in Winter.* 132
Sect. 1. *Of Perennial Greens and such Plants that cannot endure Cold.* 133
2. *Of such Plants that least endure the Cold.* 138

LIB. III.

OF *Esculents or Plants for Food.* 145
Chap. I. *Of such Plants that are Perennial or continue over the Year.* 150
Chap. II. *Of Esculent Roots.* 158
Chap. III. *Of Beans and Pease.* 170
Chap. IV. *Of Cabbages and Cauli-flowers.* 175
Chap. V. *Of Melons, Cucumbers, &c.* 180
Chap. VI. *Of Sallad-herbs.* 184

Chap.

Chap. VII. *Of Sweet herbs.* 189
Chap. VIII. *Of ſome other Eſculent Vegetables.* 192
Chap. IX. *Of general Improvements and miſcellaneous Experiments.* 195
Sect. 1. *Of improving* Garden *ground by labour only.* ibid.
2. *Of ſeveral ways of enriching* Garden *Earth by mixtures.* 202
3. *Of Watring* Gardens. 211
4. *Of making hot Beds.* 219
5. *Of Miſcellaneous Experiments.* 222

Now added:

The Gardeners Monthly Directions. 243
January. 247
February. 249
March. 250
April. 252
May. 254
June. 256
July. 257
Auguſt. 259
September. 261
October. 263
November. 264
December. 266

THE

Syſtema Horti culturæ:

OR,

The ART of Gardening.

LIB. I.

Of Gardens of Pleaſure, and the Solid Ornaments thereof.

THE Excellency of a *Garden* is better manifeſted by Experience, which is the beſt Miſtreſs, than indicated by an imperfect Pen; which can never ſufficiently convince the Reader of thoſe tranſcendent Pleaſures, that the Owner of a compleat *Garden*, with its magnificent *Ornaments*, its ſtately *Groves*, and infinite variety of never dying *Objects of Delight*, every day enjoys: Nor how all his Senſes are ſatiated

with the great variety of Objects it yields to every of them: Nor what an influence they have upon the Passions of the Mind, reducing a discomposed Fancy to a more sedate temper, by contemplating on those Miracles of Nature *Gardens* afford; deemed Miracles, because there admired and strange Forms and Effects proceed from occult causes.

The Original of *Gardens* was from a Divine Hand: And they also long since delighted in by the wisest of Kings, and in principal esteem ever since by the best of Men: The Heathen dedicated them to *Priapus* the Son of *Venus*, and celebrated them as Objects of Admiration and Delight, and left their immortal Names to Posterity; as the *Gardens* of the *Hesperides*, *Adonis*, *Alcinous*, &c. The memory of the latter being yet fresh in the Isle of *Corfu*, where in a most delicious Scituation it formerly was supposed to be, as a late Traveller hath affirmed.*

* *M.* Francis Vernon's *Letters to the Royal Society, N.* 124.

Tarquin the Proud, (a *Roman* King) thought no place more worthy than his *Garden* to give Audience to an Ambassador sent unto him: And the Glory and Pride of the *Romans* in the time of their Emperors, was in nothing more seen than in their *Gardens*, which for the infinite delight they took in them, they dedicated to *Venus* their Goddess of Pleasure, and gloried more in their Chaplets and Garlands of curious Greens and Flowers, than our vain Contemporaries now do in their richest party-coloured Habits, which he that reads what *Pliny* observed of them will readily believe. The

The learned Dr. *Brown* in his Tract of Garlands, takes notice that the uſe of flowry Crowns and Garlands, is of no ſlender Antiquity; for beſides the old *Greeks* and *Romans*, the *Ægyptians* made uſe of them at their Feſtival Compotations: And that this practice extended as far as *India*: For at the Feaſt with the *Indian* King, it is peculiarly obſerved by *Philoſtratus*, that their Cuſtom was to wear *Garlands*, and come crowned with them to their Feaſts.

The uſe of them alſo was very frequent and common, the ends thereof being many; for they were *Convivial*, wherein they had reſpect unto Plants, preventing drunkenneſs, or diſcuſſing the exhalations from Wine. *Feſtival*, their ſolemn Feſtival Garlands being made properly unto their Gods, and according contrived from Plants ſacred unto ſuch Deities. *Sacrificial*, which were ſelected under ſuch conſiderations. *Honorary* Crowns were Triumphal, Ovary, Civical, or Obſidional, and had little of Flowers in them, being made generally of Laurels, *&c.* *Funebrial* Garlands, which had little of beauty in them beſides Roſes, while they made them of Myrtle, Roſemary, *&c.* under ſymbolical Intimations. But our florid and purely ornamental Garlands, delightful unto Sight and Smell, ; not framed according to myſtical and ſymbolical Conſiderations, are of more free election; and ſo may be made to excel thoſe of the Ancients: We having *China*, *India*, and a New World to ſupply us;

beſides the great diſtinction of Flowers unknown unto Antiquity, and the varieties hereof ariſing from Art and Nature.

The *Italians*, in the time of their ancient Glory, thought no Palace nor Habitation compleat without its *Garden*, on which they ſpared for no coſt; as well in their forming them, as for the naturalizing ſeveral exotic Plants they brought from *Africa*, and other foreign places. Which *Gardens* they have from Age to Age ſo improved, that it is now become it ſelf the *Garden* of the World. And as Architecture, that ſplendid Art, hath ſpread it ſelf with other Sciences, into theſe *Northern* Climates, ſo hath the Art of *Gardening* been handed along with it, as though the former were imperfect without the latter. The Glory of the *French* Palaces, ſo often repreſented to our *Engliſh* eyes in Sculpture, are adorn'd with their beauteous *Gardens* before them; which wanting, they would ſeem without luſtre or grandeur.

Neither is there a noble or pleaſant Seat in *England*, but hath its *Gardens* for Pleaſure and Delight; ſcarce an ingenuous Citizen that by his confinement to a Shop, being denied the priviledge of having a real *Garden*, but hath his Boxes, Pots, or other receptacles for Flowers, Plants, *&c.* in imitation of it: What curious Repreſentations of Banquets of Fruits, Flower-pots, *Gardens*, and ſuch like, are painted to the Life, to pleaſe the eyes, and ſatisfie the fancy of ſuch, that either cannot obtain the

the felicity of enjoying them in reality, or to ſupply the defect the Winter annually brings?

So that we may without vanity conclude, that a *Garden* of pleaſant Avenues, Walks, Fruits, Flowers, Grots, and other Branches ſpringing from it, well compoſed, is the only compleat and permanent inanimate object of delight the World affords, ever complying with our various and mutable Minds, feeding us, and ſupplying our Fancies with daily Novels.

All curious pieces of Architecture, Limning, Painting, or whatever elſe that ſeem pleaſant to the eye or other ſenſes at firſt ſight or apprehenſion, at length become dull by too long acquaintance with them. But the pleaſures of a *Garden* are every day renewed with the approaching *Aurora*.

While with ſucceeding Flow'rs the year is crown'd,
Whoſe painted Leaves enamel all the ground;
Admire not them, but with more grateful Eyes
To Heaven look, and their great Maker prize.
In a calm Night the Earth and Heaven agree,
There radiant Stars, here brighter Flow'rs we ſee.
Gardens, *as if immortal ne'r decay,*
And fading Flow'rs to freſher ſtill give way. Rapinus.

Such is its pre-excellency, that there is ſcarce a Cottage in moſt of the *Southern* parts of *England*, but hath its proportionable *Garden*, ſo great a delight do moſt of men take in it; that they may not only pleaſe themſelves with the

view of the Flowers, Herbs, and Trees, as they grow; but furniſh themſelves and their Neighbors upon extraordinary occaſions; as Nuptials, Feaſts, and Funerals, with the proper products of their *Gardens*.

Flowers in many things convenient are,
Our Tables, and our Cupboards we prepare
With them; and better to diffuſe their ſcent,
We place them in our Rooms for Ornament.
By others into Garlands they are wrought;
And ſo for Off'rings to the Altars brought.
Sometimes to Princes Banquets they aſcend,
Rapinus. *And to their Tables fragrant Odours lend.*

It furniſhes our Kitchin and Tables with various Eſculents, as well ſatisfying Nature, as pleaſing our Appetites; it yields us various Spirits, Eſſences, Perfumes, Waters, Unguents, Conſerves, Preſerves, and many other neceſſary, uſeful, and pleaſant dietical, and medicinal Curioſities, which the ſame *Rapinus* hath elegantly expreſſed in his Poems on the ſame Subject, and at laſt concludes:

I ſhould too tedious be, if I ſhould ſing
The mighty aids which Herbs and Flowers bring
To the Diſeaſes Men are ſubject to:
For theſe the Gods with Vertue did endue.

CHAP.

CHAP. I.

Of the Scituation and Soyls of a Garden, *and their Improvement.*

SECT. I.

Of the Scituation of a Garden.

IT may ſeem needleſs to ſay any thing of the Scituation of a *Garden*, it being ſo abſolute a Concomitant to your Habitation, that a *Garden* remote or by it ſelf, is neither pleaſant nor uſeful. Therefore where-ever your Houſe is, near it muſt be your *Garden.*

But in caſe you have not yet laid the Foundation of your intended Reſidence; then may you conſider what Ground or Soyl is beſt for your Plantation and Partirre, without which you can never make the other compleat.

Therefore as near as you can, let the Soyl be good, deep, and light, that Trees and Tillage may proſper in it, and then you need not queſtion but Flowers will thrive there: Let it have the free and open Air to the *Eaſt*

and *South*, but the *South-East* is to be preferred, and the *North* defended by tall Trees, which are better than Hills, which give too great a reflection of Heat in the Summer, and impede the cool Breezes that frequently come out from that Coaſt. If the whole *Garden* be at ſome diſtance defended by tall Trees, it will very much break the fierce Winds, and ſerene Airs, that in the Winter and Spring uſually annoy the moſt delicate Plants and Flowers, and will alſo yield a cooling, refreſhing, ſweet, and healthy Air and Shade, in the hotteſt Seaſons.

If the Soyl be dry and warm, a plain Level is beſt for a *Garden*, but if it be cold or moiſt, then declining or ſhelving towards the Sun, is the beſt poſition; becauſe by Foſſes, or by the Walks, only, the Water naturally glides from it. And in ſuch a *Garden*, Trees, Plants, and Flowers, will thrive exceedingly.

Theſe Rules are good where you are to make your election, what ſort of ground, and where you deſign your Seat: I might have alſo added, the ſprings of Water in or near your *Garden*, are great additions to the Improvement, Beauty, and Glory of it, but that it's hoped few will ſeat themſelves where that Element is wanting; unleſs it be for the ſake of ſome pleaſant Grove, Proſpect, or delicate Air, Woods and Water, being two of the beſt Ornaments of the Seat, which may be had in moſt places, together with a good Air; but ſeldom Water and a good Proſpect. If

If you are fixed or limited to a place or ſcituation, that puts an end to Election, and then you are to conſider the Nature of the Soyl you are on, what it is apt to produce, how to be corrected and improved.

SECT. II.

Of the different, and moſt natural Soyls for Gardens.

LAnds are uſually inclinable to Loam, Clay, Chalk, Marle, or Sand.

A Loamy Land is uſually free, and apt to Vegetation, warm and eaſie to Till, the ſadder the Colour the better; if it be free from Stones and Gravel, with a ſandy mixture and mellow withal, it is eſteemed the beſt for *Gardens*, for the moſt ſorts of Fruits and Flowers.

There is much Land that is mixed with Clay in too great a proportion, which maketh it apt to bind, and is cold and moiſt in the Winter ſeaſon, retaining wet too much, and apt to chap in the Summer; it is injurious to moſt Fruits and Flowers, and therefore hath moſt need of help of any other.

Chalky Land is generally very ſweet, and kind to many Plants that are not very tender, it being cold in the Winter, and ſuffers not its Plants to put forth early in the Spring; it is not

not difficult to be corrected, and made more natural to the choiceſt Fruits and Flowers.

Marle is a very good mixture in Land, ſo that it be not in too great a quantity, it being much of the nature of Chalk, but eaſier to be tilled and improved.

Sandy Land is very warm and free, very apt for Vegetation, and amicable to moſt of our choiceſt Fruits and Flowers; but if the Sand predominate, it will require a conſtant ſupply of proper Soyls to enrich it.

SECT. III.

Of the Improvement of ſuch Soyls.

THere are many parcels of Land lying near Towns, Villages, and Houſes, that are of that excellent mixture of Loam, and other Earths, that they are capable to entertain moſt of the delicate Fruits, Flowers, and other Curioſities, that are fit to be planted or propagated in your beſt Partirs, without any other mixture or compoſition, other than convenient dung of Oxen, Cows, Sheep, Pullen, Pidgeons, and ſometimes old and rotten Horſe-dung, to preſerve it in its due and wonted fertility; it being by continual weeding, and the attraction of the Plants you furniſh it withal, apt to ſterilize. So that where your ground is thus naturally fertile and prone to vegitate, you need take no

no other care than to apply proper Soyls or Compoſitions, according as the nature of your Plant requires, or to maintain it in its full vigour.

Claiy Land being cold, moiſt, and ſtiff, is to be converted by labour, and mixtures of a contrary nature; if you dig it often, the Sun, Rain, and Froſt will make it more friable and fertile: For take Clay, and lay it on any other Land, it will in time diſſolve, and unite in minute parts with it, that you ſhall hardly diſcern it; ſo alſo it will be much altered by culture on its own Baſis, the wet being carefully drawn from it by declining Canals for that purpoſe, Water being the only thing that maintains its ſtubborn nature, if it reſt on it.

But to accelerate the operation, and make it ſpeedily more benign; Sand is an excellent Ingredient, eſpecially that taken up in the bottoms of Rivers, or where haſty currents have left it at the foot of Hills, or Sea-ſand where it may be had. Any old Thatch or corrupted Vegetables, as Weeds, Fern, &c. buried in the Trenches as you dig it, drains the wet from it, and makes it more mellow. But above any thing, Peat-aſhes, Turf-aſhes, or any Aſhes proportionably, and well mixed, is the higheſt Improvement, you can add to your cold, ſtiff, and moiſt Land. There are ſeveral other Additions that will improve it, as Rotten-wood, Saw-duſt, the bottoms of Piles of Wood great and ſmall; but theſe being not to be had in any great quantity, will ſerve only in theſe Beds, where you intend to plant your

your choiceſt Flowers; but Chalk, Lime, Marle, and ſuch like, although they ſweeten it at the firſt, yet in the end it unites with the Clay, and is ſoon converted into its own Nature.

Chalky Land uſually yields a good rich ſurface, therefore you muſt avoid planting too deep in it, and where you can with conveniency, the ſinking your Walks, and with the ſame matter to raiſe your Borders, is a very good Improvement of this ſort of Land. You may alſo deal with it, as with the Claiy Land, though in a more moderate way; for Chalky Land is naturally cold, and therefore requires warm Applications; and is alſo ſad, and will the better bear with light Compoſts, which is the reaſon that Chalk is ſo great an improver of light, hot, and dry Grounds, eſpecially having ſuffered a Calcination.

Lands ſeated on Marle, are uſually very rich, although cold and heavy; you need not doubt of the depth of it: for the turning it up, and expoſing it to the Air, converts it into good Earth; a mixture of light and warm Soyl exceedingly advantages it.

Sandy Lands, or Land that hath a competent mixture of Sand in it, is the warmeſt and lighteſt of all, and according to its fatneſs; it is the moſt free and apt to produce the moſt of Vegitables you plant in it. Sandy Lands are beſt improved by mixture of Chalk, Lime, Marle, the ſediments of Ponds, Lakes, or ſtanding Waters, and need a more conſtant

ſupply

ſupply of ſuch Additions than any other, unleſs you have the command of ſome Spring or Stream of Water to irrigate it, and prevent the Suns exhaling the moiſture it ſo eaſily parts withal, for we may conſtantly obſerve in rainy Summers, what vaſt products Sandy Land will afford us, compared with the dry. The ſame you will find in your *Gardens*, but the hot Dungs are here to be neglected, and the more cooling made uſe of.

The beſt for light Sandy-land, is Cow-dung, being cool and fat.

Some Plants delight in moiſt and boggy Lands, and where the Scituation of the *Garden* will not afford a Natural Bogg, an Artificial may be made, if you have the command of a Spring to feed it, or that you draw not water very deep to moiſten it often by hand; it may be made by digging a large Pit in ſuch place you think moſt convenient, where if the Earth be not tenacious enough to detain the moiſture required, you may line the bottom and ſides with Clay well temper'd and trodden down, and fill it with Earth taken from a Bogg; in which being duely watered by ſome ſmall current Led thereto, or by frequent irrigations, your curious Aquatics may be propagated as well as in the Natural.

There are ſeveral other ſorts of Land, that are known by ſeveral other Names, which I might here enumerate, but theſe being the general, and moſt Lands falling under ſome or one of theſe capacities, I ſhall not trouble you with them, here brevity being my ſtudy. But

But if your Lands or Grounds within the precinct of your *Garden*, be somewhat of a different nature or quality from these before mentioned, yet may those general directions, as concerning that Land it is nearest of Nature unto, serve for your Land. And if you have any Trees, Plants, or Flowers, that delight in Land different from the more general part of your Plantation, then may you compound your Mould in some place proper for such Plant; directions for which you will find dispersed in this succeeding Tract, especially when I come to treat of Esculents.

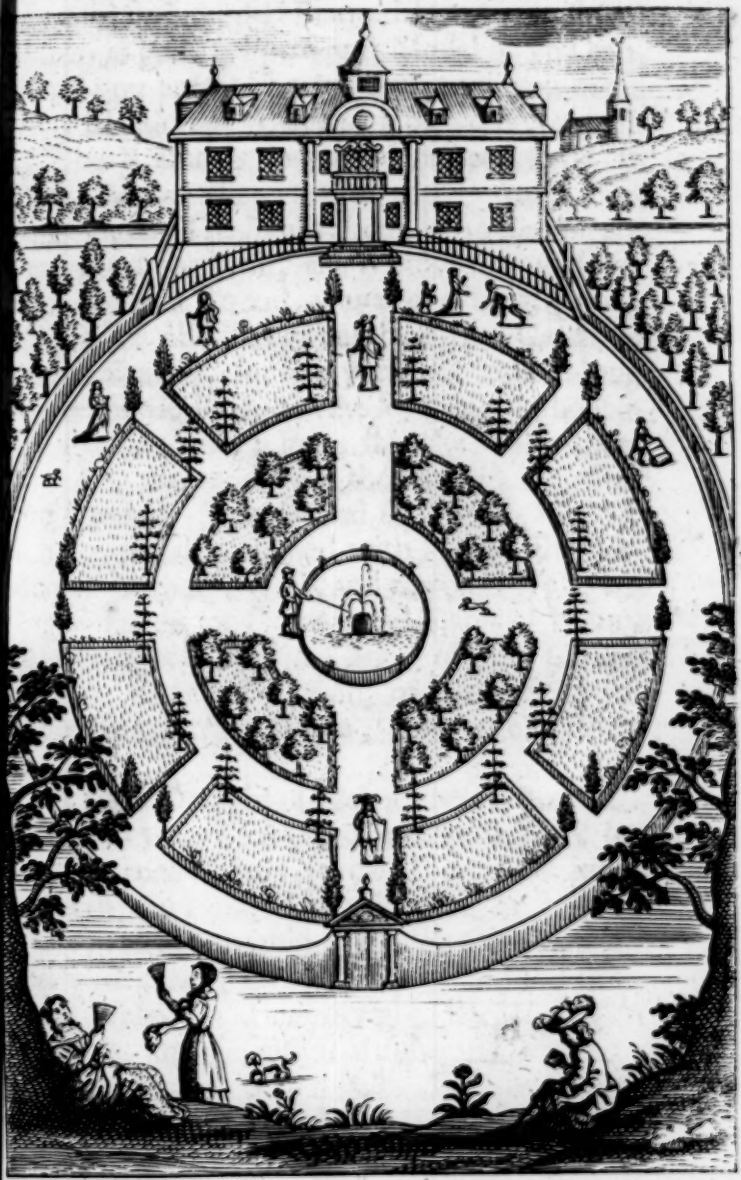
CHAP. II.

Of the Form of a Garden, *and its Fencing and Enclosing.*

SECT. I.

Of the Form of a Garden.

As before was observed concerning the Scituation, so now may it be as to the Form, that if ye are already limited and bounded, by reason of the Scituation



pg 15. F. H. Van. Houe fec:

ation of your Houſe, and the contiguous parts about your intended Plantation, you muſt caſt it into as good a Form and Model as you can, but if you are at liberty, then may you make your Election of what Form pleaſeth you beſt.

The Round is very pleaſant, and ſome curious *Gardens* there are of that Form in Forreign Parts. The Walls about ſuch a *Garden*, are very good for Fruit, the Winds being not ſo ſevere againſt a Round, as againſt a ſtreight Wall. The Walk alſo that circundates that *Garden* is not unpleaſant, for that you may walk as long as you pleaſe in it, always forwards without any ſhort turning; ſome ſtreight Walks there may be, that tend from the Circumference to the Centre. The ſeveral Quadrants may be ſub-divided and planted with Fruits; the Borders of the round Walk, and the croſs Walks being ſufficient for Flowers and Plants of Beauty and Delight. At the Centre of this *Garden*, may be placed a Fountain, or in defect of water a Banquetting Houſe, or Houſe of Pleaſure.

A rude Draught of ſuch a Form is here preſented to your View, the outermoſt Walk being adorned with Cypreſs Trees, the inner parts of the Graſs-Plats with Firr Trees, and the Quadrants within the leſſer Circle, planted with variety of Fruit-Trees, and the principal Walks round and ſtreight, bordered with Flowers, and delightful Shrubs and Plants.

Encompaſſed with a Palliſade in the Centre of your *Garden*, is a Fountain of Spring-water

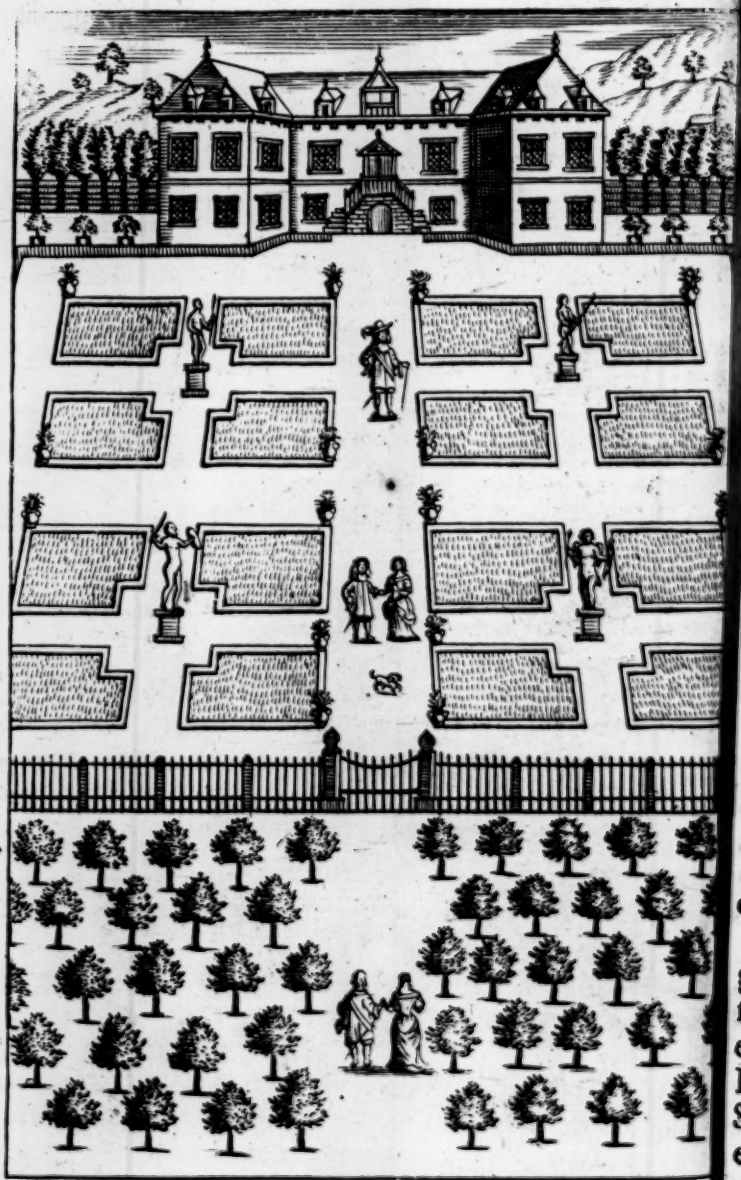
ter always flowing, ſerving not only to refreſh the Spirits of ſuch that delight in the ſight of it, but is neceſſary in dry and hot Seaſons, to preſerve your choiceſt Plants from Injury.

The Square is the moſt perfect and pleaſant Form that you can lay your *Garden* into, where your Ground will afford it; every Walk that is in it being ſtreight, and every Plant and Tree ſtanding in a direct Line, repreſents it to your Eye very pleaſing. The delight you take in walking in it, being much the more as you are leſs careful: For when you walk in a Round or Circle, you are more ſubject to treſpaſs on the Borders, without continual Thoughts and Obſervation of your Ground.

You may divide the Plot you intend for your *Gardens* into three parts, by Walls or Paliſades: The middle part may be ſub-divided into Gravel-walks, Graſs-plots, edged with Borders, planted with your moſt ſelect Plants, Shrubs, and Flowers.

If your partition Fences on the ſides be Walls, there may be raiſed the choiceſt Wall-fruits; thoſe that require moſt heat, on the moſt ſunny ſide; and Fruits that require but little, on the moſt ſhady, as Cherries and Plumbs will thrive where there is not much of the Sun; and Currants flouriſh moſt where there is all Shade; under ſuch Walls, that moſt pleaſant Fruit the Rasberry delights to grow, it being a Fruit wherewith that *Northern* cold Territory of *Lapland* abounds.

But



pg 17 F. H. Van Houe fec.

But if your Partition-fences be of Palliſades, they may be adorn'd with perennical Greens, and other hardy Shrubs, and Flower-bearing Trees.

The other two parts, you may convert the one of them into an Orchard, the other into a Kitchin-*Garden*, which will be no ſmall Advantage or Ornament to your Seat, and middle *Garden* of Pleaſure.

But if you are willing to celebrate ſo fair a ſpot of Ground, as the whole Square, to the delights of *Flora*; then may you divide it into larger Squares, and Graſs-plots, leaving only Borders on their confines for your variety of Plants.

The new mode of Gravel-walks and Graſs-plots, is fit only for ſuch Houſes or Palaces, that are ſcituated near Cities, and great Towns; although they are now become Preſidents for many ſtately Country Reſidencies, where they have baniſh'd out of their *Gardens* Flowers, the Miracles of Nature, and the beſt Ornaments that ever were diſcovered to make a Seat pleaſant. But it's hoped that this new, uſeleſs, and unpleaſant Mode, will like many other Vanities grow out of Faſhion.

A Draught of the ſquare *Garden* I have here given you, which may be varied as every Deſigner pleaſeth; each principal Walk is bordered with Flowers; each principal Corner with Flower-pots, and the middles of the greater Squares with Statues. The farther end fenced with a Palliſade, that the proſpect of the

adjacent Orchard may not be loſt; where now the Statues ſtand, if Water be to be obtained, Fountains would be placed with more delight.

The infinite variety of Forms that might be drawn and here repreſented to you, would but encreaſe your Charge; when perhaps every Builder may better pleaſe himſelf in the ſhape and contrivance of his *Garden*, better than any other can do for him.

But theſe few Rules are not amiſs to be obſerved, *viz.* That you endeavour to make the principal Entrance into your *Garden*, out of the beſt Room in your Houſe, or very near it, your Walks being places of Divertiſement after a ſedentary repaſt. The Aromatick Odors, they yield pleaſant Refreſhments after a groſs Diet; ſuch innocent Exerciſes being the beſt digeſtive to weak Stomacks. Let there be ſome other Door into your *Garden*; for Gardeners, Labourers, *&c.* And let your principal Walk extend it ſelf as far as you can in length, directly from your Houſe, Adorned with the choiceſt Plants for Beauty and Scent, and that there may be a Succeſſion of them through the Year, not without Flower-plots, which grace the beſt of *Gardens*.

If your Ground you intend for a *Garden*, lye on the ſide of a Hill, your Walks may be made the one above the other, and be as Terraces the one to the other; the declining ſides of them, being either of Graſs alone, or planted with Fruit.

If

If your Houſe ſtand on the ſide of a Hill, and you muſt make your *Garden* either above it, or below it, then make your *Garden* below it, for it is much more pleaſant to view a *Garden* under the Eye, than above it, and to deſcend into a *Garden*, and aſcend into a Houſe, than on the contrary.

As for all other Forms and Scituations of Ground above your Houſe, you muſt vary your Models according to the place.

SECT. II.

Of Fences and Incloſures to a Garden.

WHen you have diſcovered the beſt Land, and pleaſed your ſelf with the compleateſt Form you can imagine for your *Garden*; yet without a good Fence, to preſerve it from ſeveral Evils that uſually annoy it, your labour is but loſt. Your Fences muſt be conſidered of according to the place you reſide in, and nature of the Soyl, and is either of Brick, or Stone, of Earth, Pale, Palliſade, or Quick-ſetts.

Of all which the Brick-Wall is the the beſt, it being the warmeſt (except Board) and very dry and con-natural to Fruit. And where Brick are plenty, it is not a dear Fence, conſidering that their Form much accelerates the raiſing your Wall, and their even Joynts re- 1. *Of Brick-Walls.*

quire but little Mortar. You may also make the Wall much thinner with Brick, than any other Material, (Square Stone only excepted) because you may make Nieches at a reasonable Distance, or Square Pillasters on both sides, or only one side, which will support the Wall, although very thin in the Intervals: This Wall needs no other Coping than Bricks, set on edge side-ways without any over-hanging or dripping, as hath been used.

By which means of building them thin in the Intervals, with Nieches or Pillasters, at fit distances and slender copings, almost half the materials are saved in the building of them, and most of the workmanship.

These Walls are very kind to Fruits, under which they bear abundantly: The Nieches and Pilasters conduce very much to the breaking off the cold Winds, and shelter the Fruit from them.

2. Of Stone Walls. Next unto the Brick, Stone-walls are preferred, the square hewn Stone out of the Quarry, especially Sand or Free-stone is the best, the cold white Stone like unto Chalk, or Lime-stone is not so good. The rough Heath-stone or Burre is very dry and warm, but by its unevenness is unconvenient to tack Trees against, unless you disperse here and there in the building some small Squares of Timber, or Brick-bats, in the Joynts whereof Nails will enter and take. Flints are very cold and uneven Joynted, and therefore the worst of all Stone for a *Garden* Fence.

All

All Stone Walls muſt be well coped, leſt wet inſinuates it ſelf between the Stones, and decay it in a little time. A coping of Tyle is the beſt, if made to carry off the drip 3 or 4 inches from the Wall.

In many places where Stone is dear, and Brick ſcarce, and Lime and Sand not near, Walls are often made by a Compoſt of Earth, and Straw tempered with it. This Earth muſt be either of a clayiſh nature, or have a little mixture of Clay in it; it muſt be well wrought and mixed with long Dung or Straw, which ſerves to hold it together until it be throughly dry; and then according to the skill of the Work-man, wrought up into a Wall, and covered with Thatch, being not able to bear a more weighty Coping. 3. *Of Walls of Earth.*

Theſe Walls well wrought, and well coped and preſerved dry, will laſt many years, and very warm and kind to Fruits, that is, to ſuch that are content to be humble, theſe Walls being rarely built high.

In the building theſe Walls pieces of Wood, or hooks of Iron ought to be placed in, at convenient diſtances, ſtanding three or four inches without the Wall, to which Poles or Rails are to be faſtned, and to them your Fruit-trees, there being no nacking Trees to the Wall it ſelf.

This way of Fencing is much uſed in ſome parts, and ſomewhat reſembles the *French* way of making Walls for Fruit; for what-ever they are made of, they are plaſtered over, and hooks

of Iron or Sheeps shank-bones placed in the building of the Wall; at some convenient distance to affix the Poles unto, as in the small *French* piece called the *Planters Manual*, adapted only for that Countrey, may be observed. Also *Rapine* at large describes the making of that Wall, and both of them prescribe the plaistering of them, as well to destroy the vermin that would otherwise shelter themselves in the rotten cavities of those Mud-Walls, as to accelerate the maturation of your Fruits.

So that here in *England* where other Materials are scarce, and such a stiff Loam in the place, these Mud-walls may prove beneficial, not only for security, warmth, and privacy, but for the advancement and melioration of your Fruits, more especially if Lime be not wanting to make a Plaister to cover it after that *French* mode.

It is not improbable that a mixture of Loam, Lime, Sand and Gravel, or small Sand-stones, may by being raised between two Planks, and so by degrees to the height of a Wall, and then well defended by a light coping, make a very good and durable Fence and Shelter for your best Fruits. This seems to be the same way that *Pliny* mentions. The Walls to be made in his time, which then had continued many Years, and not impaired, resisting all weathers; he mentions Turrets and Sconces to have been made after this manner, *Lib.* 35. *Chap.* 14.

Good

Good oaken Timber ſawn into Pales make a very good Fence, and not dear where that Timber is plenty: Next unto Oak, Fir, or Deal Boards will ſerve; but ſcarce any other Board will endure the mutability of the weather long. 4. *Of Pales.*

Theſe Boards ought to be well ſeaſon'd, elſe will they ſhrink and chap exceedingly, which will be inconvenient, as well by rendring your ſolitary Walks leſs private, as by admitting cold breezes to your tender Fruits; but in caſe your Board do not meet in the dryeſt and hotteſt Seaſons; you may add a ſmall *Battin* to each Interval, fixt to each Rail by Nails between the Boards, that the ſwelling and ſhrinking of the Board may not injure the *Battin.*

Theſe boarded Fences are the warmeſt for your tender Fruits, and maturates them beyond any other; but being ſubject to decay, are not repairable without damage to your Trees.

I have already mentioned the moſt princi- 5. *Of Paliſades.*
pal, and beſt Fences for the outſides of your *Garden,* for privacy, ſecurity, and advantage to your Fruits. There are yet other neceſſary Fences, for the cantoning or dividing your *Garden* into leſſer parts, for the ſeveral uſes you deſign them for, or for the ſecurity of ſome particular parts of your *Garden,* or Fruits or Flowers, from the hands of every one that may otherwiſe have liberty or occaſion to walk there; yet not to impede or diminiſh

the pleaſure in viewing thoſe objects of delight thus defended.

Theſe open Fences are made of board of about three or four inches broad, and three or four foot long, either nailed to, or let thorow two Rails, with heads cut either round, or like a Lance, and painted white with Linſeed Oyl, and white Lead, two or three times over, to make them endure the weather.

But the beſt material to make theſe Palliſades withal is Iron, ſo framed as are the Iron Balconies in *London*; ſave only that theſe appear above the Rails with ſquare painted heads, which ſeem moſt beautiful; by reaſon that Flowers and other delightſom Plants appear ſo plain through them. This Fence is alſo permanent and needs no repair.

In imitation whereof, there is newly made in ſome few *Gardens* a Palliſade of Boards, of about three or four inches broad; which as before were ſet flat-wiſe, each place in the Palliſade, is now ſet edge-wiſe, the upper Rail running through each Pale, and the foot cut with an Ox Mouth, and ſet on an Arras Rail, either near the ground, or reſting on a ground-pinning of Brick. The head of each Pale is about three or four inches above the upper Rail, divided into two parts, the middle vacancy being about one third part of the whole breadth, the two extream parts for about four or five inches, being cut with ſquare pyramidical points, do very much reſemble thoſe made

made of Iron. As you ſtand againſt them they appear open, and every thing very conſpicuous through them like the Iron; but as you view them obliquely they appear full, only their ſharp heads more open and not unpleaſant. Theſe Palliſades, although they require ſomewhat more Timber and Workmanſhip than the ordinary ſort, yet are by far the more compleat and beautiful, every motion of your Body from its place, begetting a variety in the object.

Theſe open Fences are much more pleaſant and uſeful in your Partirs and inward *Gardens*, than cloſe Walls; for theſe prevent not your view of the whole, nor hinder the free Air from your Plants, which is as neceſſary in ſome degree as warmth, which ought to be obtained from Shelters and Fences at a diſtance, not by too great a reverberation of heat, and ſtifling in the Summer for want of Air, either of which proves fatal to moſt Flowers.

Gardens are oftentimes ſecur'd by quick Fences, whereof the moſt eaſie to propagate is that of the white Thorn, which being well planted in double, treble, or more Cheſts or Rows of Plants, and kept weeded and defended for three or four years, will thrive very well in moſt ſorts of Land; and being kept clipp'd, ſheer'd, or cut with a ſharp hook, will grow ſo thick that a Bird cannot find its way through, and that from the ground to ſix or ſeven foot high; and proves a very great ſecurity againſt bad Weather, evil Neighbors, and

6. Of Quick Fences.

and Cattel; but is a ſhelter for Snails, and other Vermin that will conſtantly annoy your beſt Plants, and are not therefore to be planted near your Partir, wherein you plant your beſt Flowers.

A Quick Hedge of Holly is the moſt beautiful, and moſt compact of any; but the tediouſneſs of its growth is enough to diſcourage any man from attempting its propagation, its Seed being two years before they appear above the ground, and its Plants long before they let you know of their like or diſlike of the Soil.

Pyracantha planted for a Fence, proves very ſtrong by reaſon of its ſharp Thorns, and ſtubborn Branches. *Sweet-bryar* alſo is very good, and makes a fragrant Fence; but the White-thorn will not give way to either of them, being eaſily propagated, moſt tonſile of any, durable, of a delicate colour, and early appearing in the Spring.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of the Walks, Arbors, and Places of Repoſe, in Gardens.

IT is not the leaſt part of the Pleaſures of a *Garden*, to walk and refreſh your ſelf either with your Friends or Acquaintance, or elſe alone retired from the cares of the World, or apart from Company that ſometimes may prove burthenſom to you, and when your own Laſſitude, or the Heat, Rain, or ſcorching beams of the Sun, render the open Walks unpleaſant, to repoſe your ſelf under ſome pleaſant Tree; or in ſome Covert or Shade, until you are willing to try the Air again.

SECT. I.

Of Walks, and Materials for them.

WHerefore to accommodate you for all Seaſons wet or dry, hot or cold, it is convenient to have Walks and Places of Repoſe in your *Garden*. As for Walks, the beſt for 1. *Stone Walks.*

for the Winter and wet Seasons are those paved with Stone, about the breadth of five foot in the midst of a Gravel-walk, of about five or six foot Gravel on each side the Stone, or of Grass, which you please, for on these flat Stones may you walk securely under-foot in all Weathers, without prejudice to your self or Walks.

2. *Gravel-Walks.* Next unto the paved Stone are the Gravel-walks to be preferred, which if made with a fine skreened red Gravel, do very much adorn your *Garden*; and being laid round, and kept rolled with a Stone-roler, cast off the Water, and are very useful in moist Weather to walk on.

The Gravel-walks are best under your Fruit-walks, because the beams or rays of the Sun reflect from them against the Walls, much better than from Grass, and very much advantage your Fruit.

The great inconveniences these Walks are subject unto, are Weeds and Moisture: To prevent the Weeds, you must be sure to remove all manner of Earth clean from the place before you bring in your Gravel; and in case the Earth be not stiff enough of it self, it would not be amiss to support the sides with two or three courses of Brick, or at least a Brick set on end edge by edge, to prevent the falling in, or mixture of the said Earth with your Gravel; yet so that the upper part of your Brick may be an inch beneath the surface of your Walk, that it may not be discerned. If your Ground

Ground be good and apt to run to Weeds, ſeven or eight inches deep ought your Gravel to lie, leſt the Weeds find their way through: you ought alſo to cleanſe the Ground under, from the Roots of Graſs, Weeds, as Nettles, Docks, &c. leaſt they find their way through the Gravel. You may fill your Walk with ordinary coarſe unskreened Gravel five or ſix inches, and after that is levelled, then lay on your laſt Courſe of fine Gravel, and roll it well: if your upper Courſe of Gravel be two or three inches thick, and at any time your Walk grow diſcoloured or moſſy, you may ſtir it with a Spade as far as the fine Gravel lyes, and finely rake it, then roll it again, and it will appear to be as freſh as at the firſt.

The other inconvenience theſe Walks are ſubject unto is Moiſture, eſpecially after a Froſt, which very much looſens the Gravel, and long ſoaking Rains make it apt to ſtick to your Feet: For the beſt red Gravel hath a mixture of Clay or Loam in it, which makes it in dry weather bind the better; to prevent which, ſeveral Expedients are lately made uſe of: Some do grind or beat ſmall the ſhels of Fiſh gathered on the Sea-ſhore, and therewith add a thin coat on the Gravel, which by conſtant rolling incorporates with it, and is not apt to adhere to your Shooes, as is the Gravel it ſelf. Others that live near to Brick-kilns, make uſe of the refuſe parts of Bricks that are under-burnt, which will eaſily pulverize, and lay

lay that on the Gravel-walks, which prevents the ſame inconvenience, and adds much to the beauty of your Walk, and is eaſily renewed as there is occaſion.

On the edge of your Gravel-walks, you may lay on each ſide a narrow Walk of Turf for your uſe in hot weather; or when you are willing to favour your Feet or your Gravel, which being kept out ſtrait on the edges, beautifies your Gravel.

But if you will have your Walk only Gravel, then will it be neceſſary to edge it with Brick three or four inches above the ſurface, to prevent Earth or Rubbiſh from intermixing with it; Bricks ſet on one end ſide by ſide, is the ſecureſt and moſt laſting way for this purpoſe.

3. Green Walks. Walks of Graſs are very pleaſant, and much to be preferred in the Summer to any of the other, being cold and eaſie to the Feet. They are either made by laying them with Turf, or by raking them fine, and ſowing them with Hay-duſt or Seed (which may be had at the bottom of a Hay-mow or Rick) and well roled and weeded from all groſs Weeds, will ſoon become a fine Graſs-walk; if theſe Walks alſo be laid a little rounding, they will caſt of the water the better, and be more commodious for your uſe than if flat.

A Water-table on each ſide, of two or three inches deep, cut every year anew, not only receives the waſte water, but preſerves the Graſs or Weeds from mixing with your Borders

ders, and preſents your Walk much more pleaſant to your eye, than if it were otherwiſe.

To deſtroy Weeds in the Gravel-walks, or paved Walks, where you cannot conveniently eradicate them, you muſt water it with very ſalt Water, or with the Liquor they have at the Salters, which they call *Bittern*, which abſolutely deſtroys all Vegetation, where it is caſt in an indifferent good quantity.

It is none of the leaſt oblectations a *Garden* affords, to have Terrace-walks, on which you have the benefit of the Air, and proſpect on your *Garden*. Theſe in former Ages (and now alſo in more hot Countries) were much celebrated, the *Hortipenſiles* or *Pendant-gardens*, were after this manner made above the ordinary level, for the advantage of the Air, and pleaſure of the Eye, and ſomewhat to add to the magnificence of the Place, being very beautiful as well as commodious. 4. *Of Terrace Walks.*

They are uſually made where much Earth or Rubbiſh is to ſpare, which would coſt time and labour to remove; and here is diſpoſed of to advantage, with the only expence of a Wall on the out-ſide to ſupport it; or if you pleaſe on both; but the inner ſide to your *Garden* may be made declining, and cloathed with Turf. The Wall on the out-ſide ſurmounting the top of the Walk about three foot, and on the edge towards your *Garden* may be ſet a Rail or Rail and Ballifters, or a Palli-

Palliſade, or a quick tonſile Hedge of about the ſame height the Wall is of, that neither ſide prevent the Air, nor impede your Proſpect.

In ſome *Gardens* where water is at your command, the ſinking of an Aquæduct, or Piſcary, will afford you Materials for your Terrace-walk; both of which are beſt and moſt proper to be made at the fartheſt diſtance from your Houſe.

SECT. II.

Of Arbors, and Places of Repoſe.

TO make your *Garden* pleaſant at all times, and in all ſeaſons, either in reſpect of the great variety of weather, or your own diſpoſition or indiſpoſition, it will be very neceſſary to accommodate it with places of Shade, to skreen you from the ſcorching Sun-beams, Canopies to preſerve you from the Rain, and Boxes to ſeclude you from the too cold Breezes: That although you are not willing to expoſe your ſelf too much in the intemperate Air, or your preſent inability or unaptneſs for a Walk be ſuch, that you cannot with delight enjoy it, yet that you may not loſe thoſe exhilerating Pleaſures your *Garden* moſt times affords.

For

For cool Receſſes in the hotteſt times, it hath been uſual to erect or frame Arbors with Poles or Rods, and plant them about with ſhady Trees, which are an Ornament to ſome *Gardens*; but to be rejected, 1. Becauſe they require much repair, and care to preſerve them; for in your *Garden* of Pleaſure you ought to be frugal of coſt and pains; leſt your Delights become occaſions of Prodigality, and your Recreations burthenſome to you. 2. Becauſe the Seats are apt to be moiſt and foul, it being apt to impair your health to ſit on a cold Seat, Salubrity being one of the advantages expected from a *Garden*. 3. After a ſhower in the Summer, is the pleaſanteſt time to recreate your Senſes amongſt your odorous Plants, and then this place of receſs is wholly uſeleſs, the dripping continuing long after the ſhower. 4. The uſual cool breezes that you will ſenſibly feel in thoſe Arbors to your prejudice, balance all the conveniences you can expect from them. 1. *Of Arbours.*

But if the Weather and time of the day invite you to ſit in the Air without inconvenience, a Seat under the ſhade of ſome *Platanus*, *Lin-Tree*, or the like, is much more pleaſant, than to be Hood-winked in an Arbor.

You may have a Seat made of thin and light Materials, and painted with a white colour in Oyl, or as beſt pleaſes your fancy, which may be moveable with a little help, and placed ſometimes in one place, and ſometimes in 2. *Of Seats.*

another, as the weather happens. This Seat may be made close behind, and covered, that being set with the back to the Wind, will be both warm and dry.

In the Nieches of your Wall may you place Seats covered over, that you may rest your self in at your pleasure: At the ends of your Walks are the most proper places for such Seats, that whilst you sit in either of them, you have the view of your Garden.

The best Form for these Seats is round, the one semicircle within the Wall, the other without with a *Cupulo*, the outward part to be supported by three or four, or more columns of Timber or Stone, the other part resting on the Wall, the top covered with Lead, Slate or Shingle, with its due Cornish about that part that is off from the Wall.

Or you may make them of a long square Form, about two Foot in the Niech of the Wall, and as much without, covered as the round, but casting the drip side-ways or backward.

Having several of these Seats facing to each Coast, be the Wind or Sun either way, you have a place to defend your self from it.

You may also cover your Benches or Stools with Mat, and lay the Floors with Board, which will much conduce to your own ease and health.

3. Of Pleasure-houses. Arbors, Benches, and Seats are very necessary, being present expedients for them that are weary; but that which crowns the pleasure

of

of a Garden, is a place of repoſe, where neither Wind, Rain, Heat, nor Cold can annoy you.

This ſmall Edifice, uſually term'd a Pleaſure-houſe, or Banquetting-houſe, may be made at ſome remote Angle of your Garden: For the more remote it is from your Houſe, the more private will you be from the frequent diſturbances of your Family or Acquaintance, and being made at an Angle, part within your *Garden*, and part without, you will have the priviledges and advantages of Air and View, which otherwiſe you will want, and which render it much more pleaſant than to be without them.

The Windows and Doors, the one or other reſpecting every Coaſt, may be glazed with the beſt and moſt tranſparent Glaſs, to repreſent every Object through it the more ſplendid, with Skreens of printed and painted Sarcenet, to prevent in the day, and ſhutters of thin Wainſcot in the night, others from diſturbing your ſolitary Repoſe.

Alſo you may reap the pleaſure and advantage of the Air from either Coaſt, by opening that ſide of your ſmall Edifice, from whence you would receive it, excluding on the other ſide that which might otherwiſe annoy you.

4. *Of Repoſitories for tender Plants.*

In the other corner of your *Garden*, or ſome oppoſite place to ſuch Pleaſure-houſes, may you erect another of the ſame Form to anſwer it as to your view, which may ſerve as a place

to preſerve your tender Plants in, during the extremity of the Winter, and is uſually term'd a *Green-houſe*, becauſe ſeveral Winter-Greens are therein preſerved, that will not endure the ſeverity of that Seaſon; in it alſo may you diſpoſe on ſhelves your dry Roots of Flowers and Seeds, until the time of the year mind you of interring them.

On theſe ſmall Edifices may you beſtow what coſt you can afford, and make them (as they deſerve to be) the principal Ornaments of your Ville.

5. *Of Mounts.* It is not unuſual to raiſe a Mount with the waſte Earth or Rubbiſh, you may otherwiſe happen to be troubled withal, at ſome convenient diſtance from your Houſe, on which as on your Terrace-walks, you have the advantage of the Air and Proſpect, and whereon you may erect a *Pleaſure* or *Banquetting-houſe*, or ſuch like place of Repoſe.

The moſt famous of this kind, is that near *Marlborough*, whether firſt raiſed by Art or Nature is not yet determined, however it hath a moſt pleaſant and eaſie aſcent, and from the Summit whereof you have a good Air, and a fair Proſpect.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of Springs, Rivers, Fountains, Water-works, and Grotto's, neceſſary for a Garden.

IT is not to be denied, that a kind and fruitful Soil may produce all ſorts of Plants proper for a *Garden* of Pleaſure, Uſe, or Advantage, which may render ſuch a Place delightful; yet cannot ſuch a *Garden* ever be ſaid to be complete, nor in its full ſplendour and beauty, without this Element of Water. Wherefore *Rapinus* adviſeth that,

You then who would your Villa's Grace augment,
And on its Honour always are intent:
You who employ your time to cultivate
Your Gardens, and to make their Glory great,
Among your Groves and Flowers let Water flow;
Water's the Soul of Groves and Flowers too.

Beſides the particular uſes you may put it to in watring your ſeveral *Gardens*, it is very pleaſant to have your Piſcaries, Rivulets, Fountains, *&c.* about your Ville.

SECT. I.

Of Springs.

MAny pleaſant Seats, Vills, and *Gardens* there are, that are very well ſcituate for Air and Proſpect, that are of themſelves dry, which defect may be ſupplied from Springs of Water riſing at ſome diſtance, and may be conveyed by Pipes to ſuch places in your Ville, or *Garden*, as you deſire.

Of Pipes for Water. In places where Wood is plenty, the Elm is the moſt proper material to make Pipes withal, for the conveyance of water from the Spring to your *Garden*, not being ſubject to be torn by Froſt, as are the leaden or earthen Pipes, either of which you muſt be ſure to lay deep enough below the ſurface of the Earth, that the Froſt may not reach them.

Leaden Pipes are the moſt convenient where water is to be raiſed to any conſiderable height, being not apt to grow leaky, nor to decay; but you muſt be ſure to lay them deep in Clay as you can; but not in any mixture of Lime, or ſuch like, leſt it decay the Metal: alſo you muſt have a Turn-cock at the loweſt part of your Pipe, where muſt be a paſſage, that out of it you may let the water at the beginning of a Froſt, to prevent the Pipes from breaking.

Ear-

Earthen Pipes may be made of about three foot in length, and made to fit the one into the other; and as they are laid deep in a ſoft Bed of Earth, Clay, or Sand, the joynts may be cloſed with a cement of Quick-lime, Linſeed-oyl, and Cotten-wool, and bound about the joynt with a piece of Leather, and a turn or two of Pack-thread: But theſe Pipes are not for forcing the water to any height, being apt to break, but are very neceſſary cheap and ſweet for the conveyance of any Spring without force, to the place you deſire.

Sometimes it happens that Springs lye concealed in the Earth, which may, if diſcovered, prove very uſeful in your Ville, and pleaſant in your *Garden*, which to diſcover, obſerve the Precepts of *Rapinus*:

Where ſmall declining Hillocks you perceive,
Or any Soyl where Flags and Ruſhes live,
Where the fat ground a ſhiny moiſture yields,
If Weeds and prickly Sedge o'reſpread the Fields;
There hidden Springs with confidence expect,
For ſedgy places will to Springs direct.

Alſo ſeveral Ruſticks there are, that can direct you to the neareſt Spring, being acquainted with the nature of the Soil and Place.

Theſe if they lie above or level with your *Garden*, may be brought by Pipes into it; but if they happen to lie below it, then muſt you

erect Cisterns or Receptacles above your Springs, that they may command your *Garden*, and raise the water into them by Machins made for that purpose, moved by men, horses, or the wind; which when full, may serve to supply your *Garden* for a certain time, and when expired, the said Cisterns may be again filled by the former means.

SECT. II.

Of Rivers.

ALthough small Crystalline Springs brought in Pipes may be sufficient to irrigate your Groves and Plants, and supply your Grotts and Fountains, and add very much to the splendor of your *Garden*; yet,

Rapinus.

——If my Advice you take,
In the low Places of your Garden make,
Besides the other Springs, large Trenches too,
To which from every part the streams may flow.
For little Brooks and Springs are not so good,
Nor please so much as a more noble Flood.

A fair Stream or Current flowing through or near your *Garden*, adds much to the Glory and Pleasure of it: On the Banks of it may you plant several aquatick Exoticks, and have your Seats or Places of Repose under their Umbrage,

brage, and there ſatiate your ſelf with the view of the Curling Streams, and its nimble Inhabitants. Theſe gliding Streams refrigerate the Air in a Summer Evening, and render their Banks ſo pleaſant, that they become reſiſtleſs Charms to your Senſes, by the murmuring Noiſe, the Undulation of the Water, the verdant Banks and Shades over them, the ſporting Fiſh confin'd within your own limits, the beautiful Swans; and by the pleaſant Notes of ſinging Birds, that delight in Groves, on the Banks of ſuch Rivulets.

Where ſuch a Stream or Rivulet cannot naturally glide through your *Garden*, but near unto it, it's probable that part of it may be raiſed by ſome Machine, at ſome diſtance from your *Garden*, and by an Aquæduct conveyed through it, which will be more commodious (the charge only excepted in the bringing it thither) than the natural Current. 1. Becauſe natural Currents are uſually in the loweſt grounds, which are not ſo proper for a *Garden*, as a declining or ground above the level of the adjacent Lands. 2. For that an Artificial Current is not ſubject to thoſe Extravagancies, that the natural uſually are, by over-flowing after haſty Rains. 3. Thoſe Waters that are brought by Art, are eaſily carried off again, and may be conducted to ſeveral parts of your *Garden*, on the Edges of your declining Walks, whether they decline little or much; if but little, then may Canals be made in the natural Earth, without any danger

ger of decay or wearing, as *Rapinus* obſerved of the Water running through the *Gardens* of *Lian-Court*.

For by the Gardens *ſide, the Rivers paſs,*
From no ſteep Cliff, but down a bank of Graſs.

But if your *Garden* lye on a more declining Bank, then are your Aquæducts to be paved and edged with Stone or Brick, leſt the Velocity of the Current by degrees eat away the Earth before it: Theſe Aquæducts may be carried almoſt level, and have their Precipices at ſeveral diſtances, as the form of your *Garden* will bear: Theſe Water-falls will appear very pleaſant, if made broad at the end, as the ſame Poet tells you,

Nor ſhould it leſs deſerve of our Eſteem,
When from an even Bed diffus'd the Stream,
Runs down a poliſh'd Rock, and as it flows,
Like Linnen in the Air expanded ſhows.

4. Waters brought in by Art, may better be confin'd in Canals regularly made, and Fiſh kept in them, eaſier preſerved than in the natural, where Inundations uſually unſtock your Piſcaries; therefore if you can, choſe rather to bring a fair Current of Water through your *Garden*, above the level of the main River; if it cannot be done by an ordinary Aquæduct, yet may it by an Engin placed in the River, where the one part of the Water ſhall conſtantly

ſtantly raiſe another for your purpoſe, the manner of making and ordering whereof is not proper for this place; therefore for your further information.

——*Vide Syſtema Agriculturæ.*

SECT. III.

Of Fountains.

Fountains are principal Ornaments in a *Garden*; ſcarce a famous *Garden* in *Europe* without its *Fountains*, which were primarily intended for Bathing, and are in the more Southern Countries uſed for that purpoſe to this day. The *Italians* beſtow very great coſt in beautifying them for that uſe: The *French* are very prodigal in their Expences about *Fountains*, and ſeveral curious *Gardens* in *England* have them; but here only for Ornament, they are generally made of Stone, ſome ſquare, others round or oval, and of divers other forms, ſome flat in the bottom, others round like a Baſon.

Into ſome the Water is caſt by Pipes from the ſides, out of the Mouths of ſeveral Figures repreſenting Animals, or out of the Pipes of *Ears* of Stone ſtanding on the brim of the *Fountain*, or the Water is caſt from ſome *Figure* or *Statue* erected in the middle of the

the *Fountain*, or from a Pipe ſtanding upright in the midſt of it.

There muſt alſo be waſt Pipes or Cavities to convey away the Water from ſuch *Fountains*, which muſt be ſo made, that at your pleaſure you may drain your *Fountains*, and cleanſe them, and muſt be of capacity to carry off all the Water as it comes, leſt it annoy your *Garden*, for the greater quantity of Water you have, the more pleaſant will it appear.

Plenty in Fountains *always graceful ſhows,*
And greateſt Beauty from abundance flows.

But where neither Springs nor Rivers can be obtained to compleat your Pleaſures, yet for uſe and a little for delight, may Water be procured from the Heavens, by preſerving the drips of the Houſe, and conveying it to ſome Ciſtern made for that purpoſe in your *Garden*, which may reſemble a *Fountain*, or make a fair Receptacle in your *Garden*, for the Water that may be gained from the declining Walks of your *Garden*, or from adjacent Hills, as *Rapinus* directs.

But if the place you live in, be ſo dry,
That neither Springs nor Rivers they are nigh;
Then at ſome diſtance from your Garden *make,*
Within the gaping Earth a ſpacious Lake,
That like a Magazine may comprehend
The aſſembled Floods, which from the Hills deſcend.

Here

pg. 45 F. H. Van. Hove fec:

Here follows a

DESCRIPTION

Of ſeveral ſorts of

FOUNTAINS.

I. THE Ball raiſed by a Spout of Water.

II. The Water repreſenting a double Glaſs, the one over the other.

III. A Dragon or ſuch like, caſting Water out of its Mouth, as it runs round on the Spindle.

IV. A Crown caſting Water out of ſeveral Pipes as it runs round.

V. A Statue of a Woman, that at the turning of a private Cock, ſhall caſt Water out of her Nipples into the Spectators Faces.

VI. The Royal Oak with Leaves, Acorns, and Crowns dropping, and ſeveral ſmall Spouts round the top.

VII. The Ciſtern into which the Water flows by the Pipe A. the Air iſſueth out at the Pipes bbb. the ends whereof make the Muſical ſounds in the Trough of Water at C. which is ſupplied with Water, by the Pipe D. which in time dreins the Ciſtern,

ſtern, which waſt Water precipitates into E. *and from* E. *into the common Drein.*

Theſe Waters are to be preferr'd for the irrigation of your Plants to any other, and in caſe you make your Ciſterns well, and Cement the Joynts of your Stone with *Pariſian Cement*, or with our own Lime compounded with Linſeed-Oyl, they will retain the Water for a long time.

SECT. IV.

Of Water-works.

BEſides thoſe natural Courſes that are propoſed, for the leading the Water from the one place of your *Garden* to the other, after it is entred into its limits, there are ſeveral ways of ordering it, where it is either Naturally or Artificially advanced above the level of your *Garden.*

The docile Streams will any ſhape put on,
Rapinus. *A thouſand different Courſes they will run.*

Therefore the Water muſt be conveyed from ſome Ciſtern or Conduit, ſtanding above your *Garden*, at ſome diſtance by Pipes, or elſe it muſt by ſome Artifice be raiſed into a Ciſtern of Lead over ſome Lodge or *Grot* in your

your *Garden*, that from thence it may by ſmaller Pipes be ſecretly conveyed to your ſeveral Works.

As to the *Fountains* where it may be caſt through various Figures, as before was hinted in the laſt Section.

Or it may be made to riſe in the midſt of a *Fountain* or your Grotto, through the Branches of an Artificial Tree, each Sprig being hollow, that it may continually drop with Spouts on the top, for the erecting of greater quantities of Water.

Or it may riſe in one ſmall upright Stream, carrying a Ball of Wood on it, which being exactly round, and placed on the mouth of the Pipe, and the Water by the opening of a ſtop-cock made for that purpoſe, admitted by degrees; the Ball will riſe and be ſupported by the Spout of Water, to five, ſix, or ſeven foot high, after the ſame manner as a ſingle Peaſe may be elevated by your Breath on a Straw; but in caſe your Ball be apt to fall, then may you perforate it through the Centre ſmoothly and exactly in the middle, and place this ſmall hole directly on the middle of the mouth of the Pipe, and ſo raiſe the Ball by degrees, and the ſmall ſpout of water that paſſes through the Centre of the Ball, will preſerve it in its due poſture.

By a *Copper Cylinder* made to fit on the top of the Pipe, out of which the water violently flows, to take off and on at pleaſure; may you ſometimes make the water reſemble a large

Glaſs

Glass inverted, by placing a flat piece of Copper on the top of the *Cylinder*, and leaving only a narrow circular passage under it, for the water freely to flow out of it on every side. Another Pipe or *Cylinder* of a lesser size, made to rise off the middle of the said flat piece of Copper or Cap, with a like Cap on the top of it, and a passage left as before, will cause the water issuing out of both the *Cylinders* the one over the other, to present a Glass within a Glass, both inverted.

Also *Crowns*, *Birds*, *Beasts*, made of light Brass or Copper, hollow and easie to turn on a *Cylinder*, the one end of the *Cylinder* is to be set on the top of the Water-pipe, the other end to force the water with certain thin Vanes in the inside of your hollow Figure, which will make it to move swiftly about, ejecting the water out of the sides or mouth of the Figures in its motion, which is very pleasant to behold.

Secret Pipes may be under the Ground, the ends not appearing above it, that when any Ladies unawares, or casually walk or stand over them, by the turning of a stop-cock, you may force the water upright under their Coats, to their sudden surprize.

You may also place on Pedestals of about three foot high, several Figures at about three foot distance, ten or twenty of a side: The interval between these Figures may be 8 or 10 foot over. Through these Pedestals and Figures, small Pipes must be brought, that the water

Water may out of the mouth of the Figures be ejected into the Air; the one Figure directing it towards its oppoſite Figure beyond it, and a little ſideways, ſo that at the turning of a ſtocp-cock, each Figure ſhall caſt out a ſtream of Water over like a Rain-bow, that you may walk under theſe Spouts, as under ſo many Arches, without any drop falling on you.

But that which is very delightful, is the ſinging of the Nightingal, exactly imitated by the motion of the Water, and is thus performed: In ſome Cavity of your Grott or other Edifice where you deſire at any time to hear this Muſick, you muſt place a large Ciſtern of Lead, containing ten, twenty, or thirty Gallons, as you pleaſe: This Ciſtern muſt be well clothed on every part (except the uſeful paſſages for Pipes) into it: near the top muſt the Water be let in freely through a Pipe of about an inch diameter; then you muſt have alſo near the top, two, three, or four ſmall Pipes iſſuing out, tending a little downwards, at the end of which you muſt fix your Pipes made of Braſs, or other Metal, made before you fix them like an ordinary *Fiſtula*, wherewith Children exerciſe themſelves in their paſtimes, ſo that when you try it with your Breath, and hold the lower end in Water, it ſhall pipe and chuck as the Nightingal ſometimes doth; you may make two, three, or four of theſe of ſeveral ſizes, the biggeſt not large, and they will give ſome diſtinction in ſound, theſe being

fixed to the ends of the ſmall Pipes iſſuing out of your Ciſtern, and the lower ends of them dipping into a Trough of Lead, a little below the bottom of the Ciſtern; when by the turning of a ſtop-cock, the Water flows into the Ciſtern, it expelleth the Air through theſe Pipes, which give you your deſired Muſick, until your Ciſtern be full, then muſt you ſtop the Cock, that the Ciſtern may empty it ſelf again, and be ready for another time.

The Pipe through which it empties its ſelf, may be at the bottom of the Ciſtern, of about the diameter of one third part of an inch, ſo that the Pipe that ſupplies the Ciſtern with Water, muſt of neceſſity be of Capacity ſufficient to afford Water enough for this under Pipe, and to enforce Air for the muſical Pipes, therefore this emptying Pipe you may leſſen as you find occaſion.

The Water that runs through this lower Pipe, may deſcend into the Trough that is under the muſical Pipes, to ſupply that with Water.

Inſtead of this lower Pipe, you may have a Siphon made in your Ciſtern, the inner foot of it to reach the bottom of the inſide, the neck thereof to be near to the top of it, but not altogether ſo high, the outer foot of it ſomewhat lower than the bottom, that when the Water flows into the Ciſtern, and ſtops the inner foot of the Siphon, the Air forthwith gives you your Muſick until the Ciſtern be full, then of its ſelf the Water paſſes through

the

the Siphon until the Ciſtern be empty. In this way, leſs Water will make your Muſick, becauſe there is no decreaſe of it until the Ciſtern be filled, but then you muſt not deſiſt until it be full, elſe it will not flow out of the Siphon. You muſt alſo ſupply the Trough before your muſical Pipes with Water from ſome other Pipe, therefore the former way is the more facile.

By this means may you make many Muſical Artificial Sounds, and to continue in proportion according to the quantity of your Water, and capacity of your Ciſtern; the Water that flows in waſt from it, being made to fall from one precipice to another, which with its murmuring Noiſe intermixed with the Muſical Pipes, makes an excellent charming Harmony, eſpecially none of it being in view, but concealed in Rock-work made for that purpoſe.

SECT. V.

Of Grotto's.

IT oftentimes happens that in theſe *Northern Climes*, the *Æſtival* heats are more troubleſome than they are nearer the *Zodiack*, the Sun continuing here longer above the *Horizon* in the Summer ſeaſon, than in thoſe parts, which occaſions that intemperancy that many times

we are ſenſible of; for as we have leſs of the preſence of the Sun in the Winter, ſo have we that defect ſupplied in the Summer.

But thoſe that inhabit more *Southerly*, and have the Sun more perpendicularly over them, are more ſenſible of the acute heat of that bright Orb about the middle of the day, generally than we are; and therefore about the heat of the day, they uſually ſequeſter themſelves from their ordinary Occupations, and betake themſelves to their ſhades and cool places of Receſs for ſome few hours.

Such that have convenient places in their Villes, make themſelves *Grotto's* or Caves in the Earth for that only purpoſe, on which ſome have beſtowed ſo much Coſt and Labour, that thoſe Grotts have been the Object of Admiration of, and part of the Subject of ſeveral Hiſtories written by ſeveral Travellers and Strangers, as are their Baths and Fountains.

For the ſame reaſon may our Grotts be as neceſſary for us, to repoſe our ſelves in the time of our Summer ſaint Heats, although they are not here ſo conſtant every year as in thoſe parts, yet are they leſs tolerable, for want of theſe nocturnal breezes they uſually enjoy.

Therefore either in the ſide of ſome declive of a Hill, or under ſome Mount or Terrace artificially raiſed, may you make a place of repoſe, cool and freſh in the greateſt heats. It may be arched over with Stone or Brick, and you may give it what light or entrance you

pleaſe.

pleaſe. You may make ſecret Rooms and Paſſages within it, and in the outer Room may you have all thoſe before mentioned Water-works, for your own or your Friends divertiſements.

It is a place that is capable of giving you ſo much pleaſure and delight, that you may beſtow not undeſervedly what coſt you pleaſe on it, by paving it with Marble, or immuring it with Stone, or Rock-work, either natural or artificially reſembling the Excellencies of Nature. The Roof may be made of the ſame ſupported with Pillars of Marble, and the Partitions made of Tables of the ſame.

The moſt famous of this kind that this Kingdom affords, is that *Wiltonian Grotto* near unto *Salisbury*, on which no Coſt was ſpared to make it compleat, and wherein you may view, or might have lately ſo done, the beſt of Water-works, far excelling what *Rapinus* thus ſings of late *Richlieu*'s Palace in *France*.

Here variouſly diſpos'd the Fountains run,
Firſt headlong fall, then riſe where they begun;
Receive all forms, and move on every ſide,
With horrid noiſe, Chimæra *gaping wide;*
Out of her open Mouth the Water throws,
For from her Mouth a rapid Torrent flows:
From her wide Throat, as Waves in Circles ſpout,
A Serpent turning ſprinkles all the rout.

But they that cannot command the Water to crown the Pleaſures of their *Gardens*; yet are there few that cannot find ſome convenient place for this purpoſe, it being as neceſſary in them to avoid the liquefying Air, as in other places the unpleaſant Breezes.

CHAP. V.

Of Statues, Obelisks, Dyals, and other invegitate Ornaments.

Statues. IN all places where there is a Summer and a Winter, and where your *Gardens* of Pleaſure are ſometimes clothed with their verdant Garments, and beſpangled with variety of Flowers, and at other times wholly diſmantled of all theſe; here to recompence the loſs of paſt Pleaſures, and to buoy up their hopes of another Spring, many have placed in their *Gardens*, Statues, and Figures of ſeveral Animals, and great variety of other curious pieces of Workmanſhip, that their Walks might be pleaſant at any time in thoſe places of never dying Pleaſures.

Herein the ancient *Romans* were exceſſively prodigal, ſparing of no Coſt to adorn their Avenues with curious Figures for their Winter diverſions, as well as with rare Plants for their Summer

Summer delights. Which vanity (although one of the moſt excuſable) is deſcended on the *Italians*, whoſe *Gardens* are the Mirrors of the World, as well for thoſe Ornaments, as for their excellency of the Plants that are propagated in them.

This Mode of adorning *Gardens* with curious Workmanſhip, is now become *Engliſh*; how many Statues made by excellent Art, are there to be ſeen in His Majeſties *Gardens*, and in the *Gardens* of divers of the Nobility of *England*? But what great pity is that in many places remote from Cities and great Towns, theſe Statues ſhould drive out of their view thoſe natural Beauties that ſo far exceed them?

Much more Ornamental are Statues placed in Groves and Shades, and in or near your Borders of the choiceſt Plants, than on the naked ſurface of the Earth, which later beget not that ſurpriſe in the Spectators, as the other.

Statues are commendable in the midſt of Fountains, and green Squares in Groves, and at the end of obſcure Walks.

2. *Obelisks.*

In the room of Statues in the midſt of your green Squares, Obelisks, or ſingle Columns may not be improper, ſo that the Workmanſhip be accordingly. Neither can there be a more proper uſe for an Obelisk, than to ſupport a Globe with its Axis duely placed reſpecting both Poles, and its circumference on the Equinoctial Line, exactly divided into twenty four parts, and marked with twice

twelve hours, that on it at a distance by the shadow only of the Globe on its self, you may discern the hour of the day, and observe how the Day and Night, and Summer and Winter happen throughout the Universe.

Many Dials of various and curious Workmanship are made, and may be placed on Pedestals in the midst of the Squares instead of Statues, which better become the shades.

3. *Dials.* Dials of Glass, were it not for the Casualties they are subject unto, pre-excel any other for Beauty, especially the Globe with its Axis through the midst, and duely elevated with small Beads on it, placed at their due distances according to the Lines of the Celestial Globe, painted on the superficies of your orbicular Glass, which will not only give you the true hour of the day, but all other variations that a Dial can direct: But more of these things in another place.

Flower-pots. Other ancient Ornament of a *Garden*, are Flower-pots, which painted white and placed on Pedestals, either on the Ground, in a streight line on the edges of your Walks, or on your Walls, or at the corners of your Squares, are exceeding pleasant,

They are usually made of *Potters* Clay, and burnt, which when full of Earth, and frozen in the Winter are apt to break, unless you place another ordinary pot of Earth in the inside of it, wherein to plant your Flowers, you design to propagate in them.

But to prevent that casualty of breaking,

some

ſome are made of Lead well painted and guilt, which are much to be preferred.

One of the pleaſures that may be eſteemed belonging to a *Garden*, is an Aviary, which muſt be near your houſe, that you may take ſome delight in it there, as well as in your *Garden*, and that you may in all ſeaſons take care of its Inhabitants: As for its bigneſs, manner of making and ordering, it is not proper in this place to be diſcourſed of, we being rather for an Aviary at large, that the whole *Garden* with its Groves and Avenues may be full of theſe pretty Singers, that they may with their charming Notes, rouze up our dull Spirits, that are too intent upon the Cares of this World, and mind us of the Providence, the great God of the Univerſe hath over us, as well as theſe Creatures.

5. *Of an Aviary.*

LIB. II.

Of the divers Trees, Flowers, and Plants, that beautifie and adorn a Garden.

CHAP. I.

Of Trees for Ornament and Shade.

HAving lightly paſſed over the Scite, Form, Security, and dead Ornaments of your *Garden*; it is time now to give you an account of ſuch Vegetating Ornaments, that are proper and very well becoming the *Gardens* of the moſt curious. And becauſe the *Cypreſs* is the moſt beautiful and moſt celebrated Tree, I ſhall begin with Perennial Greens.

SECT.

SECT. I.

Of Winter Greens.

OF all the Trees that have been propagated in our *European* parts, none have yet merited that eſteem as the *Cypreſs* hath done, it being the moſt uniform, ſtreighteſt, and moſt ſlender of any other, preſerving its Verdure throughout the year. 1. *Of the Cypreſs.*

Its natural Country is *Candia*, where (as *Pliny* writes) if a man plow the ground, and not ſow it with ſome other thing, *Cypreſſes* will come up, and preſently ſhew above ground; from whence they have been ſpread into the moſt parts of *Europe*, ſo far as the extream cold will give them leave.

Their Seed ſeldom or never ripens here in *England*; but ſuch as you have from foreign parts, you muſt ſow about the beginning of *April*, which when come up and carefully watred and weeded, you may remove.

Theſe Trees may be either planted as Standards, or in Hedges, and clipped as other tonſile Hedges uſually are, if you intend them for Standards, at about three or four years the middle ſhoot ought to be cut off near the top, and the whole Tree cut into a pyramidical Form, and not bound as is the uſual cuſtom, only clip them not late in the year, leſt

the

the Froſt prove too fierce and kill your Trees.

For if they are not cloſe bound but clipt, and ſtand not in a cold moiſt Ground, they will endure the hardeſt Froſts, and ſharpeſt Winds: For I have known many that ſtood in the loweſt part of the *Garden* killed with the extremity of cold, when others that ſtood on a Terrace, more obvious to the cold Winds eſcaped; and for no other reaſon, as I could judge, but their dry and healthy Soil they grew in.

2. *Of the Laurel.*

As the *Cypreſs* for its Beauty, ſo the *Laurel* for its Glory, hath been in great eſteem with the Ancients, whoſe Branches have crowned the Heads of Emperours in their Triumphs; and thoſe that were Victors in War, or any ſolemn Games: The *Laurel* Branches are alſo Emblems of Peace, and of pre-excellency in any ingenious Science or Enterprize, the ancient *Romans* attributed unto it an extraordinary property it had againſt the evil effects of Thunder and Lightning, and therefore planted it near unto their Houſes and Lodgings.

It is one of the beſt ornamental Trees you can plant either for beauty or ſhade, it will cloath your moſt ſhady Walls, and will endure the moſt ſcorching beams of the Sun, it will mount to twenty or thirty foot in height, and be content to be humble and tonſil, no Weather will annoy it, it delights moſt in moiſt Ground.

In watry Vales, where pleasant Fountains flow,
Their splendent Leaves the lovely Laurels show.

And agrees best with a cool shady place which is equal to a watry.

They grow tall, and bear great plenty of Berries, from which the Trees are easily propagated, or from Layers, or slips, set in a cold moist place.

The *Laurus Tinus* is a Shrub yielding sweet scented Tufts of white Blossoms in the Winter, as well as the Summer, is easily propagated from Suckers or Layers, and deserves a place amongst the best of your perennial Greens: There are two sorts, the one with a narrow, the other with a broad Leaf. *Laurus Tinus.*

The *Bay-Tree*, our old *English* Plant is a fine oderiferous Tree, but worn out of that great esteem that formerly was had of it, by the more beautiful and hardy Laurel. *The Bay Tree.*

Few Greens exceed in Beauty, either in Branch or Leaf the *Phylirea*, which spreads so fairly, and near the ground, and rises to that height, and so easily managed with the Shears, that it is esteemed one of the most pleasant Plants that Nature yields, it is very hardy and endures our generally most severe Winters, having never known them nipp'd with fierce Cold, but (*Anno* 1663, and since in *Anno* 1683.) and then the Branches being for the most part cut off, the Tree reassumed its former Lustre. 3. *Of the Phylirea.*

It

It is raiſed of Seeds, and may be increaſed by Layers, and ſometimes by Slips, it will not eaſily bear a remove till the coldeſt Seaſons are over.

There are two ſorts of it, the one with a ſmaller and more edged Leaf than the other, which yields great plenty of Bloſſoms in the Winter, which laſt until the Spring, which Bloſſoms are of a ſtrong Scent, by reaſon of a gummy Matter adhering to them, which the Bees wonderfully affect, which blooming Trees, if there were many of them near your Apiary, they would very much help your Bees, before much of other Food was to be found by them in the Spring; but the barren Tree is the more beautiful.

Theſe Trees may be cut into any form high or low, in Hedges or in ſingle Trees, and will cover a Seat or Bower in a ſhort time, and more neatly than any Tree whatſoever.

4. Of the Alaternus. A Species of the ſame is the *Alaternus*, a hardy pleaſant Shrub, not aſpiring to that height as the *Phylirea*, but is apt for Hedges, and eaſily managed.

5. Of the Box-Tree. Moſt of the ancient *Gardens* of *England* were formerly beautified with this never dying Box, becauſe you might have reduced it to any form or ſhape high or low, but by reaſon of the ill ſavour emitted from it, and by its ſpreading Roots continuing long in a place, ſterilizing the confining Earth, it is now baniſhed out of our *Gardens*.

Our

Our modern Planters have brought into our *Gardens* to adorn our Walks, the *Eugh*-Tree, which growing tall and ſtout againſt all Weathers, and its ſmall Twigs ſticking cloſe to the Trunk, clothing it always green, no Sun nor ſhade offending it; is one of the moſt ornamental Trees you can deſire. The *Eugh*-Tree may be clipt and reduced to any form, but eaſily to the compleat form of the *Cyprus*. 6. *Of the Eugh-Tree.*

I ſhould undervalue the Judgment and Opinion of our beſt Arboriſt Mr. *Evelin*, if I ſhould not numerate the *Holly* amongſt the moſt ſelect of our Hortenſe perennial Greens, which he eſteems to be the moſt incomparable for *Uſe*, *Defence*, *Sight* and *Ornament*; I need ſay no more of it, ſeeing his learned Pen hath ſufficiently emblazoned its frame. 7. *Of the Holly.*

The Firr-Tree is rather for the Woods, than for the *Garden*, yet by reaſon of the ſlender and aſpiring Trunk of the ſtreight Firr, and the facil keeping and preſerving its Branches in a compleat circular order, it doth very well become a *Garden*, planted at the corners of your Squares, or in direct lines at a little diſtance from your Walks. 8. *Of the Firr.*

Having one of theſe Trees whoſe top was periſhed, I clipt it with my Shears, and reduced it to a fine Conick ſhape, and find it as eaſie to be managed with the Shears, as any other Plant.

The

The *Norway* Firr is eaſily managed with Shears, and kept in the form of a *Cypreſs*, growing thick on the ſides when clipt, and being planted thick in Hedges, may be clipt as other tonſile Plants, and make a very neat and cloſe Fence.

They are eaſily propagated from the Seed taken out of the Clogs, and ſown in *March*, and very well endure a remove; all other ſorts of Firr and Pines, beſides the ſtreight ſmall leaved Firr are to be excluded your *Garden* of Pleaſure, being not capable of being reduced to a compleat form.

9. *Of the Cedar.* For the rarity of it more than for its beauty, may the famous *Cedar* find a place in your *Garden*, the name whereof is ſufficient to revive thoſe ſtupendious relations of the Magnitude, Durableneſs, Excellency and Virtues of that moſt ſacred of Trees.

10. *Of the Ilex.* Not unbecoming your *Gardens*, is the *Ilex*, or ever green Oak which is hardy, though ſlow in growing, and propagated from its Seed, or by Layers.

11. *Of Tree Stone Crop.* The greater *Tree Stone Crop* is a beautiful Green, not common, but raiſed from Layars, and preſerved in ſome *Gardens*.

12. *Of the Arbutus.* The *Strawberry* Tree, as it is ſo termed from the red Berries it uſually bears, although difficultly raiſed from Seeds or Layers, and with the like difficulty removed whilſt young, yet thrives very well in the warm part of your *Garden*, adding much Beauty to it, by its green Leaves all the Winter, and its Berries in the Autumn.

One

One of the moſt Vulgar, yet moſt uſeful and neceſſary Greens is the *Roſemary*, a Plant natural to many places in *Spain*, but here nouriſhed in the warmeſt places of our Kitchin *Gardens*; I have obſerved in ſome Country *Gardens*, a dwarf kind of *Roſemary* kept ſheared, that hath been exceeding comely, the Plant is eaſily managed, did not the moſt ſevere colds deſtroy it, but that dwarf kind is the more hardy. 13. *Of Roſemary.*

The large double *Roſemary* is the more Ornamental to a *Garden*; but that with a double bloſſom the more rare.

The *Pyracantha*, or ever green Hawthorn, is a compleat Tree for a Fence, its Thorns being ſtrong and ſharp; it is alſo very beautiful when its Berries are ripe, which are of a Coralline red, its Leaves ever green, but not very thick. 14. *Of Pyracantha.*

The *Arbor vitæ*, ſo called from its ever green and hardy Leaf, may be planted to make up your number of Greens, for its Rarity, but not for its Beauty, any more than the *Savin*, which is much like it. 15. *Of Arbor vitæ.*

The *Celaſtrus* or Staff-Tree, bearing a few green Leaves over the Winter, and as Mr. *Rea* adviſeth, is fit to be mixed with *Pyracantha*, for the making of the ever green Hedg. 16. *Of Celaſtrus.*

The *Juniper*-Tree although uſual in the Woods, or Commons, yet deſerves a place amongſt our choiceſt Winter-greens, it being capable of any form, growing tall like the *Cypreſs*, or ſpreading as you are willing to order it. 17. *Of the Juniper-Tree.*

Theſe ever green Plants have in them a ſtrong reſinacious Juice, that fortifies them againſt the Cold, and is the cauſe of the continuing of the Leaf ſo long on the Stalk, as may be obſerved in the *Firr* and *Pine*, what an abundance of that Terebintine Sap do they contain, enduring the moſt fierce Colds the *Northern* Climate yields; the *Cypreſs* and the *Roſemary* both yield a very hot and reſiny Sap.

18. *Of the Holly.* The *Holly* affords us out of its Bark, that glutinous Bird-lime, that enſnares the heedleſs Fowl, which diffuſed naturally into its Leaves, enables them againſt all the inconveniencies of Winter and Cold. The *Phylirea* hath a very ſtrong Sap that preſerves it. And all the other Winter Greens have more or leſs of the like reſinous and glutinous Sap or Juice, that is not ſo eaſily preyed upon by extream Colds.

SECT. II.

Of Variegated or Gilded-leafed Plants.

THoſe perennial Greens are very Ornamental, planted in their proper places of your *Garden* and Avenues, by reaſon of their perpetual Verdure, that the Winter that ſeems elſewhere moſt barren, here amongſt theſe Greens appears like a perpetual Spring; yet muſt

muſt they give place to the moſt beautiful of Trees and Shrubs of the ſame kind (as to their durableneſs) by reaſon of their variegations, much excelling thoſe that are of a plain colour.

For what can be more pleaſant than to have Groves or Walks (when the Flowers that are but for a day are retired) apparrelled with gilded party-colour Garments, ſome with yellow and green, others with white and green, emulating the two royal Metals, that by the Gilder's hand adorn the Palaces of Princes. The moſt excellent of all which gilded Plants is the *Holly*, whoſe Bark as well as Leaf, is variegated with a bright yellow; the more yellow the Leaf is, the more beautiful is the Plant; ſome are ſtrip'd throughout the Barks and Berries: If vulgar green *Holly* be ſo glorious and refreſhing an Object, as Mr. *Evelin* hath Characterized it to be, then certainly the ſame with a due mixture of a bright yellow muſt pre-excel. In fine, whoſoever hath once ſeen this Tree, will not think any perennial Green equal to it, for it is like the true Scarlet-dy which preſent, debaſeth all other Colours. 1. *Gilded Holly.*

The gilded Laurel is a very pleaſant Tree, although inferiour to the *Holly*; for want of that Oriental Verdure and more polite Leaf, but this Plant is more rare to be obtained than the gilded *Holly*. 2. *Gilded Laurel.*

3. *Gilded Phylirea and Alaternus.*

Of *Phylirea*, alſo there is a ſort that is much variegated with white, and is very pleaſant, as the like there is of *Alaternus*, which is not altogether ſo hardy as that of the *Phylirea*, yet both worthy of your care.

4. *Gilded Box.*

The Leaves of *Box* are on ſome Trees gilded with an edge round each of them with yellow, but theſe Trees do not annually produce all their Leaves gilded: ſometimes they are green, and ſometimes gilded; yet are theſe Trees not to be wanting in your golden Grove.

5. *Gilded Roſemary.*

There is beſides the *Roſemary* that is gilded with yellow, a ſort of it variegated with white, very delightful to the Eye, and not ſo common as the yellow; both theſe are to be preſerved under warm Walls, or other Fences to ſecure them from the too ſevere Winds; but the white is the more tender.

6. *Gilded Periwinckle.*

The *Periwinckle* is a low creeping Plant, ſome bearing white, ſome blew Flowers, growing wild in many places, and ſcarce worthy of a place in a *Garden*, except for the covering the Ground in the Shades of your Groves and Avenues, with its ever green and running Branches; but the gilded *Periwinckle* whoſe Leaves are exceeding well variegated, much reſembling the gilded *Phylirea*, or *Alaternus*, is as compleat an Ornament for clothing the Earth of your golden Grove, as any of the gilded Trees are for the more lofty part of it.

7. *Gilded Lilly.*

And although your gilded Trees are moſt becoming in a Grove or Walk, and the *Periwinckle*

winckle be proper for an humble Ornament, yet ſome Plants of a middle rank or degree, may not unbecome ſo ſplendid an Object; of which none can be more ſuitable than the Lilly, whoſe verdant ſhining pale-green Leaves are curiouſly painted by Nature's Pencil with yellow, appearing at a great diſtance, as well as near very beautiful; the[illegible] Leaves from the Ground to the top of the Stalk, from the Spring to the Autumn, being much more comely than the Bloſſom, which is the fair white Lilly.

It is known to all Naturaliſts, that the beſt *Garden* Ground is moſt prone to Weeds, which are its Spontaneous productions, and ſeeing that Weeds are expected in our *Grove*, as well as in our *Garden*, it were better that it were in part ſupplied for want of gilded leaved Flowers with gilded Weeds, whereof the Night-ſhade, otherwiſe a noiſome Weed, but with its variegated Leaves, and here and there thinly diſperſed, and gilded *Mugwort*, another Weed of the like nature, would make a good mixture with the other richer Dyes, like the ordinary Colours in a Picture, which ſerve to illuſtrate the more excellent. 8. *Gilded Night-ſhade and Mugwort.*

Some other ſorts of gilded Plants there may probably be; but theſe are all that I have hitherto obſerved. As theſe have been caſually met withal, and from them others have been raiſed, ſo by the ſame reaſon may other ſorts be diſcovered, that yet have not been obſerved. 9. *There is alſo variegated Wood-bine.*

For travelling through ſome part of *Glamorganſhire*, and diſcourſing of theſe variegated Greens, one of that Country aſſured me, that in that Country was a very large *Holly* with all its Leaves curiouſly gilded, growing wild in a Wood, which was not unlikely, for from the Woods they firſt came, but that which was moſt ſtrange was, that the ſame Tree ſhould be neglected, and not a great number of Plants raiſed from it.

The Reaſons why ſuch variety of Colours ſhould appear in the Leaves of Trees and Plants, are not eaſily diſcovered, ſeeing that we may obſerve the like in the various Colours of ſome ſorts of Beaſts and Birds, whereof no account has been yet given; and they as well theſe are alſo apt to degenerate. But the reaſon of ſuch a variegation of Colours may be ſuppoſed to be a Defect in Nature, becauſe the more ſterile the Land is wherein they grow, the better are their Colours preſerved, and the more rich the Ground is, the ſooner do they degenerate. And as theſe curious Plants are by accident, or ſome ſecret inclination of Nature undiſcovered unto us, ſo they are the more to be valued, and on them may we the better beſtow our delight and admiration.

10. *The Embroidered Elder.* Thus will we conclude this Section, of monſtrous Curioſities in the Leaves of Plants, with that of the *Elder-Tree*. It hapned that about two years ſince, (being *Anno* 1674.) a *Gardener* near *London*, by accident diſcovered in a Hedge an *Elder-Tree*, whoſe Leaves ſeem'd

ſeem'd to be embroidered, by the ſwelling of the Veins that ſpread themſelves throughout the Leaf, and appearing of a different colour from the reſt of it, they being of a curious Texture, made them appear to the Eye moſt beautiful and rare, which Tree he tranſplanted into his *Garden*, as no ſmall curioſity.

Theſe gilded party-colour'd Branches, would well have became thoſe Crowns and Garlands ſo frequently uſed by the Ancients, had they been then known, and might (ſome of them at leaſt) have been incerted in Dr. *Brown*'s Catalogue of Coronary Plants.

SECT. III.

Of other Trees propagated for their Beauty and Shade.

BEſides theſe perennial Greens and other Rarities in Nature, that ſeem to take up ſo large a room in your Plantation, yet are there other Trees that in the Spring, and throughout the Summer, do very much adorn your *Groves* and *Avenues*, and cool and refreſh thoſe that delight to walk in them in the heat of thoſe ſeaſons. The moſt principal of which is the *Platanus*, a Tree ſo much admired by the ancient *Romans*, that they preferred them before any of their own Native Productions, and that for their Shades only, it ſo abſolutely

1. *Of the Platanus.*

excluding the Beams of the Sun in the Summer, and admitting them in the Winter. The Branches are but thin and ſlender, the Leaves broad, and of colour pleaſant, the Tree groweth large. *Pliny* records that in his time, a *Plane-Tree* was of that bigneſs, that being hollow within, eighteen perſons uſually ſat on Benches in it, and ſupp'd with *Licinius Mutianus* its owner. This Tree delights in Water: for the Tree that grew to that bigneſs, had a cool Fountain adjoyning to it, and thoſe that had not ſo convenient a place for it, yet it ſeems by *Pliny*, out of their extraordinary affection to it, irrigated it with better Liquor. He alſo tells you of another, that the Emperor *Caligula* had in his Ville, in which was a capacious Room, that fifteen Perſons might ſit at a Repaſt, and yet ſpace enough for their Servitors to wait on them. In truth, the World doth not yield a more beautiful Tree for ſhade than the *Plane*. It grows and proſpers well, if planted in a moiſt Ground, or be conſtantly watred whilſt it is young, and will ſoon arrive to your deſired bigneſs.

2. *The Tilia.*

Unto the *Platanus*.

High ſhooting Linden, *next exacts your care,*
With grateful Shades, to thoſe who take the Air.

This Tree ſeems to contend with the *Platanus* for Beauty and Shade, only its Leaves are not ſo fair, but for its conick or pyramedical Form,

Form, it exceeds moſt Trees, and for its ſweet ſcent, wherewith it perfumes the Air in the Months of *July* and *Auguſt*, there is no Tree comparable to it of that magnitude. The Bees will teſtifie it, who in innumerable multitudes gather on the rows of theſe Trees when they are in Bloſſom. They are reducible almoſt to any Form, if planted at a diſtance they ſpread, if near they aſpire. They delight in moiſt and good ground, and are very quick of growth. The many large Avenues planted of them in moſt places, ſufficiently demonſtrate their Beauty, Shade, and Flavour.

3. *The Caſtanea Equina.*

The *Horſe Cheſnut* for the Beauty of its Leaves in the Spring, and the compleat form of its Bole, is not unworthy of a place amongſt the beſt of Trees for Shade and Ornament. This Tree is very lately made Engliſh, being brought in its Seed or Nuts, from *Conſtantinople*, it proſpers very well here in good light Mould, it buds all the Winter, and until it ſprings, are covered with a ſhining glutinous matter or Gum, and about the beginning of *May*, it uſually makes its whole Years ſhoot in eight or ten days, and then dilates its Leaves, more pleaſant than which ſcarce any Tree yields. In the ſame Month it puts forth many Branches of Flowers, ſo mixed, that they ſeem to be enamel'd, and are very beautiful; in ſome years, a few of thoſe Bloſſoms are ſucceeded by Nuts, in form of Cheſtnuts included in a Coat or outward Shell.

Chriſt's

4. *Paliurus.* *Christ's Thorn*, ſo named, for that it is ſaid to be the ſame wherewith our Saviour was Crown'd at *Jeruſalem*, near which is the natural place for its growth. This Tree may be placed in your *Garden* as a Rarity, as may that which is yet a greater wonder called.

5. *The Glaſtenbury Thorn.* The *Glaſtenbury Thorn*, being in appearance a vulgar white Thorn, yet budding and yielding plentifully its Bloſſoms in *December*. I have for ſeveral years obſery'd it in Bloſſom at *Chriſtmas*, ſometimes it bloſſoms before, if the Weather be mild, but if the Cold be very ſevere, it will retard it: Thoſe Bloſſoms are ſucceeded by Berries and Leaves, although in the Winter, as the ordinary white Thorns are in the Summer. They that read and believe the Divinity of the Monaſtery of *Glaſtenbury*, may the more eaſily believe the report of this Tree, that by its bloſſoming on the twenty fifth day of *December*, it doth not only indicate unto us the very day of our Saviour's Nativity, but condemns our ſloth and contumacy in not rejoycing with it at ſo glorious a diſpenſation.

This Tree flouriſhed many years in *Wilton* Garden near *Salisbury*, and I ſuppoſe is there yet, but is not altogether ſo exact to a day, as its original from whence it came was reported to be, it's probable the Faith of our Anceſtors might contribute much towards its certainty of time. For Imagination doth operate on Inanimate things, as ſome have obſerved.

Thus

Thus have you a brief account of the moſt delightful, pleaſant, and ornamental Trees wherewith to beautifie your *Garden*, *Avenues*, and *Groves*, which are ſhady and cool Receſſes from the noiſe and cares of the World, and the hot Gleams of the Sun, and are an artificial *Epitom* of the larger *Woods*, *Forreſts*, and *Groves*, ſo much celebrated by the Ancients, who attributed unto them moſt Divine Honour.

Here you may in a ſmall Room, and at an eaſie Expence, reap the advantage of thoſe more ample Poſſeſſions.

Thus bleſt is he, who tir'd with his Affairs,
Far from all noiſe, all vain applauſe; prepares
To go, and underneath ſome ſilent Shade,
Which neither Cares nor anxious Thoughts invade,
Does for a while himſelf alone poſſeſs,
Changing the Town for Rural happineſs:
He if he pleaſe, into the Groves *may ſtray,*
Liſten to the Birds, which ſing at break of day. Rapinus.

SECT.

SECT. IV.

Of the Propagating and Planting the ſaid Trees.

THE ſeveral Trees before mentioned, are variouſly propagated and removed at various times, being many of them *Exoticks*: And therefore the nature of the Climate is to be conſidered.

Such of them that are natural to this, or a more Northerly Climate, may be removed at any time of the Winter, but the nearer the Spring the better, and are generally raiſed of Seed, as the *Holly*, the *Eugh*, the *Firr*, the *Pyracantha*, and the *Glaſtenbury-Thorn*. The *Lawrel*, *Laurus Tinus*, the *Bay*, the *Tilia*, the *Caſtanea Equina*, although raiſed by Layers as well as by Seeds, yet will endure a Winter removal.

The *Cypreſs*, the *Pine*, the *Cedar*, and the *Celaſtrus* are more tender, and although they are raiſed of Seed only, yet ought they to be removed in the warmth of the Spring about *March* or *April*. As alſo the Plants, Slips, or Layers of the *Phylirea*, *Alaternus*, *Ilex*, *Arbutus*, and *Roſemary*, whether from Seed or Layers, becauſe they are brought hither from a more Southerly Country.

The Slips or Layers of all your gilded Plants, de-

deſerve your care in removing them, as the plain Trees of the ſame kind ought to be.

The *Box*, the greater *Tree-ſtone Crop*, *Arbor Vitæ*, *Savin*, *Platanus*, and the *Paliurus*, are increaſed by Slips and Layers only, which muſt be laid or ſlipped in the Spring, and (except the *Paliurus*) may be removed all the Winter, the *Paliurus* only in the Spring.

It is obſerved, that it is the beſt way of planting the *Box*, to ſtrip away the Leaves from the Slip, and not to wind the Stem, but to ſet it whole without winding.

It is alſo ſaid, that every ſlip of a *Bay-Tree* will grow, if ſet in *March*, the great Leaves being ſtript off, but they muſt be ſhaded, and ſometimes watred if need require, elſe they will not ſo eaſily take root.

The gilded Trees or Plants muſt be increaſed by Layers, Slips, or Graffs, for it is obſerved, that by raiſing of them from Seed they degenerate, by reaſon that the Hawes or Seeds of the white Thorn come not up the next year after they are ſown: It will be ſomewhat tedious for ſuch as delight in Curioſities, to wait for the production of the *Glaſſenbury Thorn* from the Seed; therefore the beſt and moſt expeditious way of raiſing this Rarity, is by grafting it on a common white Thorn.

The *Holly-Berry* continues the like time in the ground before it ſprings, but the Berries cleanſed of their mucilage before they are planted, very much accelerates their ſpringing: The Berries of the *Eugh* require the ſame ordering.

The

The *Juniper* Trees are propagated, either by Plants taken from the Woods, or by their Seeds or Berries, which will ſoon come up.

CHAP. II.

Of Flower-Trees.

AFter your *Garden*, *Avennes*, and *Groves*, are reduced into ſuch form as you deſire, and thoſe adorn'd ſo far as neceſſarily they ought to be, with thoſe graceful and immortal *Greens* and other pleaſant Trees yielding ſhade and delight; it then behoves you to furniſh thoſe intervals that remain, and the borders of your Walks with Flowers, the wonders of Nature for the richneſs and variety of their Colours, Scents, Forms, and Seaſons. Amongſt all which, thoſe Shrubs or Trees yielding ſo great a variety of thoſe Objects, are moſt to be prized, and of theſe is the Roſe to be preferred.

SECT.

SECT. I.

Of the various kinds of Roſes.

THere is no Flower-bearing Tree that yields ſo great variety, nor any Bloſſoms ſo beautiful as the Roſe, nor do they only adorn but perfume your *Gardens.*

Now I perceive from whence the Odours flow,
While on the Roſes kinder Zephyrs blow.
Out of the prickly Stalk the Purple-Flower
Springs, and commands the Vulgar to adore,
The Garden-*Queen doth now her ſelf diſplay,*
Soiling the Luſtre of the riſing Day.

Between the Tulip and the Gillyflower, they are the greateſt Ornament to a *Garden,* whereof the yellow *Province-Roſe* is the moſt beautiful, where it brings forth fair and kindly Flowers, which hath been obtained by budding a ſingle yellow *Roſe* on the ſtock of a flouriſhing *Francford Roſe* near the Ground; when that ſingle yellow is well grown in that Branch, inoculate your double yellow Roſe, then cut off all ſuckers and ſhoots from the firſt and ſecond, leaving only your laſt, which muſt be pruned very near, leaving but few Buds, which will have the more Nouriſhment, and yield the fairer and more entire Bloſſom.

1. *Of yellow Roſes.*

This

This Tree or a Layer, from a Roſe of the ſame kind delights moſt, and blows faireſt in a cold, moiſt, or ſhady place, and not againſt a hot Wall.

The ſingle yellow Roſe is ſcarce worth the planting, except for the uſe aforeſaid.

2. *The Auſtrian Roſe.* The neareſt in Colour to the former is the *Auſtrian Roſe*, being but ſingle, yet in much eſteem for its Bloſſom, whoſe Leaves are of a Scarlet colour within, and on the outſide of a pale yellow.

3. *The Damask Roſe.* The ſweeteſt and moſt uſeful of *Roſes*, is the *Damask*, which in my Lord *Bacon*'s time, was by him obſerved not to have been in *England* above one hundred years; of theſe Damask kinds, there is one that beareth Bloſſoms with the firſt, and ſo continues with new Bloſſoms, until the Froſts prevent it, and is therefore

4. *The Monthly Roſe.* called the *Monthly Roſe*, and is not inferiour in ſmell to the Damask, and deſerves a place amongſt your moſt ſelect Plants; this ſeems to be the *Roſe* that *Pliny* mentions to be growing in *Spain*, that blow and flower all the Winter.

5. *The Damask Province Roſe.* The *Damask Province Roſe* differs from the ordinary Damask, in that only it is very double and fair, but not ſo ſweet.

6. *The York and Lancaſter Roſe.* The *Damask-Roſe* with ſome of its Leaves marked with a faint bluſh, is uſually termed the *York* and *Lancaſter Roſe*. I ſuppoſe becauſe it was the firſt variegated Roſe that was here known after the uniting thoſe two *Houſes* or *Roſes*.

But

But the beſt of *Damask-Roſes* and inferiour to none other, is the *Damask* compleatly ſtriped, uſually called Mrs. *Harts*'s Roſe; it is a very plentiful bearer, the Flowers exceeding ſweet and very beautiful, and that *Garden* is defective that is without it. 7. *Mrs Harts's Roſe.*

There are two Roſes bear the name of *Belgick-Roſes*, the one of a bluſh Colour, bearing many Flowers at the end of a Branch, and thoſe very ſweet, and this Tree is eſteemed the greateſt bearer of all Roſes. The other is of a red Colour, very double and beautiful, and in good eſteem. 8. *The Belgick Roſe.*

The ordinary *Red-Roſe* is generally known, the *Hungarian Roſe* is little better, and the *Red Province* is eſteemed only for its fairneſs, as is the *Dwarf Red Roſe* for its humility. 9. *The Red Roſe.*

The *Roſe* that moſt illuſtrates the whole kind is the *Roſa-mundi*, being Red elegantly ſtrip'd with White, two ſo divers colours appearing plainly at a diſtance; its Scent is weak, but that defect is ſupplied by its Beauty. 10. *Roſa Mundi.*

The *Marbled Roſe* is a very fair red Roſe, fully and curiouſly marked or dappled with dark Colours, that it very much reſembles *Marble*, from whence it hath its Name, and deſerves a place amongſt the beſt Roſes. 11. *The Marbled Roſe.*

The *Velvet Roſe* is the darkeſt of all Roſes, and its Leaf much reſembling Velvet, it's not very double, but ſome more than others. This Tree, and the *Roſa-mundi*, are very great Encreaſers. 12. *The Velvet Roſe.*

13. *The Francford Rose.* The *Francford Rose* yieldeth large shoots, and is fit for the budding of the yellow *Rose* on it, the Flowers not much to be commended, nor is that of the *Rose* without *Thorns*, or the *Virgin Rose*.

14. *The Cinamon Rose.* The *Cinamon Rose* is in esteem only for its sweet Scent and early Blowing, being the first of Roses.

15. *The white Rose.* 16. *Rosa Canina.* The vulgar white and blush *Roses* are known to most, the *Rosa Canina* so call'd from its whiteness like unto a Dogs Tooth, yet not so perfectly white as the Vulgar, but much more double, and for that reason it is esteemed.

17. *Musk Roses.* The double *Musk Roses* flower later than any other Roses except the *Monthly Rose*: Their Scent gives them their Name, and deserve a place in your *Garden*, but the single called the *Spanish Musk Rose*, is not of such value.

18. *Evergreen Rose.* One sort of the Musk Roses keepeth on its green Leaves all the Winter, which property hath imposed its Name; its Flowers are single, yet not to be slighted by the curious.

19. *Double Eglantine.* The vulgar sweet Briar for its excellent Odour in the Spring, deserves a place near your House or places of Repose, yet not so much as that which bears a double Blossom, for which it is preferr'd to it, and is one of the best of Odoriferous Plants.

20. *The Gelder Rose.* The *Gelder Rose*, or *Gelderland Rose*, supposed thence to have its Name, or rather *Elder Rose*, from the likeness of its Branches to *Elder*, having the name of a *Rose* I place it here, although not in any thing resembling it. It is

is a hardy Tree, and yields great plenty of Snow-white Bunches of Bloſſoms, and very well becomes a *Garden*, or a Chimney with a due mixture.

There are divers other ſpecies of Roſes, as the *Chriſtal Roſe*, the *Damaſk Muſk Roſe*, the *Great Apple Roſe*, ſo called from the bigneſs of the Berries or Apples that come after its ſmall ſingle Bloſſoms are fallen, *&c.* But theſe muſt give way to thoſe before mentioned, and therefore it's needleſs to ſay any more of them.

SECT. II.

Of Ordering of Roſe-Trees.

ROſes have been in ſo great eſteem from all Antiquity, that the curious have been very diligent in their propagation, amendment and diſcovery, ſeveral having been in ſeveral Ages produced that were not known to the Times preceding, and various ways have been invented and found out for their propagation, improvement and preſervation.

The more excellent ſorts of them have ſucceeded very well by grafting on the Stock of the common ſweet Briar.

And by inoculation may they be increaſed on the Stocks of the common Roſe Trees; the time for this work is about *Midſummer*.

And when you have thus obtained one Tree of a ſort of the more Rare, you may multiply them by laying them, which may be done without the help of Boxes or Pots, the Branches being pliable, and the Tree it ſelf humble, only by bending down the Tree, and laying the Branches in the Earth, and covering the middle of them, being firſt prickt with an Awl about ſome joynt, that is to be under the Earth. This may be done in the Spring, ſometimes watring the Layers in dry Weather, then in the Autumn moſt of the Sprigs will have taken root, and are in their prime to be removed; theſe will never degenerate, and all Cions proceeding from them, will be of the ſame.

To make *Roſes* bear early, they muſt be planted in a very warm place, or on a declining Bank towards the Sun, and irrigated with Water, enriched with the hotteſt Dung or Shavings of Horn and Lime ſteeped in Water: ſome ſay warm Water will accelerate their blowing.

To make them bear late, the way approved of by ſeveral upon Experience, is at the time when they begin to bud, to clip or ſhear off all the Buds, and when other Roſes have done blowing, theſe will ſhoot forth new Buds; thus may you annually continue this pleaſant Flower longer than naturally it would, by cutting ſome of your Trees, that they may ſucceed the other.

Some

Some ſay, if you cut the tops of the Trees in the firſt of the encreaſe of the Moon after the Bloſſoms are faded, that another ſhew of Bloſſoms will appear about *Michaelmas*; but the other is the more certain way.

To have *Roſes* until *Chriſtmas*, you may plant the monthly Roſe in ſome Niech of your South-wall, and you will have Roſe-buds freſh and fair in *October*, and in mild Winters in *November*, which by Shutters artificially made, may be defended from the Cold (ſometimes admitting the Sun) until *Chriſtmas*, you may add artificial warmth to them if you pleaſe: I have had fair *Roſe-buds* in *November*, with younger by them, which might have been thus preſerved.

Muſk Roſes are to be planted againſt a high Wall or ſide of ſome Building, and not check'd in their growth upwards, leſt you hinder their bearing.

SECT. III.

Of divers other Flower-bearing Trees.

BEſides the great variety of Colours and delightful Scent that the Roſes have for the greateſt part of the Summer yielded you, yet there are ſeveral other ſweet and pleaſant Objects Nature hath furniſhed you withal; if you will lend your aſſiſtance to convey them into your *Garden*, of whom none are gratefully odoriferous than the *Jaſmins*.

Nor knows he well to make his Garden *ſhine,*
With all delights, who fragrant Jaſſemine,
Neglects to cheriſh.—— Rapinus.

1. *Yellow Jaſſemine.* 2. *White Jaſſemine.*

The moſt common is the *Yellow Jaſſemine*, but the White far exceeds it in Beauty, and yielding one of the moſt Odoriferous Flowers in Nature, as the perfumes made thereof Witneſs. In the Autumnal Seaſon, theſe laſt furniſh you with many Bloſſoms for a long time, until the Froſt prevent them, both theſe require the help of a Wall or Palliſade, their Branches being but ſlender and weak, yet enduring the moſt ſevere Colds.

3. *Indian Jaſſemine.*

The *Indian Jaſſemine*, or the *Mexican Tlilxochitle* is a Plant requires a tall Wall to aſpire againſt: At every Joynt it hath ſmall Claws or Tendrils, inſinuating into Brick, Wood, or any other penetrable ſubſtance, and requires but ſmall aſſiſtance to prune it, it affords a beautiful Scarlet Bloſſom in *America*, being one of the Ingredients to the famous Drink *Chocolate*.

The two former Jaſſemines are great Encreaſers, and all of them may be increaſed by Layers.

4. *The Perſian Jaſſemine.*

Nor inferiour to the beſt of the former, is the *Perſian Jaſſemine*, for that it is a beautiful Shrub, yielding in the prime of the Summer moſt pleaſant and well ſcented Bloſſoms, which welcome you to the choiceſt Flowers, Trees will yield. As the *Perſian Nuts* and *Iris*, ſo the

Per-

Persian Jassemins precede in Blossom, all others in respect of time, and therefore are the more valued; they are easily increased by Layers.

Not much unlike in Blossom to the last, is the blew *Syringa Pipe-Tree*, or *Lilac*, the white is more rare, being but of humble growth, the Bark of a whitish Colour, the Leaves of a very pleasant pale Green, affording you Branches of fine scented white Flowers in *April* and *May*, and is a Tree yielding Suckers plentifully, but the best is that of a purple Colour, which two last very well merit Room in your choicest Avenues. 5. *The Lilack.*

This is another Tree, that beareth the name of *Syringa* or *Lilac*, which never riseth so high as either of the other, but beareth many clusters of Flowers, of a faint white or wild Primrose colour, yielding a strong Sweet, almost like unto that of *Orange Flowers.* 6. *Syringa.*

The double blossomed *Pomegranate Tree*, is esteemed the rarest of all flowring Trees, yielding so pleasant a Branch, and a much more lustrious Blossom. 7. *Balaustium.*

Pomegranates next their Glory vindicate,
Their Boughs in Gardens *pleasing Charms create.*
Nothing their flaming Purple can exceed,
From the green Leaf the golden Flowers proceed.

This Tree deserves the choicest place in your *Garden*, and under the warmest Wall, being tender whilst young, but after very hardy; the Flowers are double, fair and beautiful,

exceeding all others, born by Trees: they are eaſily propagated by Layers.

This delicate Plant deſerves a little of your Care and Aſſiſtance, in ſeparating from it the many Suckers that uſually proceed from it, and keep it to a few or but one Branch, and ſometimes enrich the Ground with well conſumed Hog's dung; for it is the plenty of Nouriſhment makes them apt to Bloſſom, and too many Branches or Suckers rob them of it; you need not houſe them, but if you doubt your Wall ſtands too open to the cold Winds, which only can hurt them, it is but taking a Mat, or placing a Skreen before them in the Winter, to defend them from it.

8. *Dwarf Almonds.* The dwarf Almond is a very humble Shrub, bearing in *April* many fine Peach-coloured Bloſſoms, and is a very pleaſant Plant, and yields plenty of Cions, it deſerves a place in your *Garden*, and needs not to be houſed, it enduring all Weathers; in ſome years it bears Almonds of a very bitter taſt.

9. *Mezerion.* The *Mezerion*, from whence ſoever tranſported, is one of the moſt hardy Plants in Nature, ſending forth its pleaſant, beautiful, and odoriferous Flowers in the coldeſt Seaſons of this *Northern* Climate, uſually in *January*, and continues in Bloſſom in *February* and *March*, after them Leaves, and then its Coralline Berries, by whom it is increaſed. The Shrub is of a very ſoft conſiſtence, and although cold will not kill it, yet is it very tender in the choice of its Ground, I ſuppoſe a light

light Ground, or a very moiſt are not proper for it, Heat being more offenſive to it than Cold.

There are three ſorts of them, the one of a Peach colour, another more red being not ſo common, the other and the moſt rare is the white. 10. *The Sena Tree.*

There are two ſortsof *Sena Trees*, the great *Baſtard Sena*, and the *Scorpion Sena*, both of them yielding a pleaſant Leaf, and fine yellow Bloſſom, not unbecoming a good Floriſt's *Garden*, they are ſlender and require the help of a Wall, endure all Weathers, are tonſile, and therefore reducible into any order, and are increaſed by Seeds, Layers or Suckers. 11. *Spirea Frutex.*

The Shrub *Spirea* is a ſmall Tree, bearing ſmall Peach-coloured Bloſſoms about the Month of *Auguſt*, it's a hardy Tree, and is increaſed by Layers. 12. *Arbor Judæ.*

The *Judas Tree* yields a fine purpliſh bright red Bloſſom in the Spring, and is increaſed by Suckers and Layers. 13. *Laburnum.*

The *Bean Trefoyl*, ſo termed from the likeneſs of its Leaves to the Herb Trefoyl, and its Pods to Beans, it affords many fine yellow Bloſſoms, and is a very pleaſant though common Tree; it is increaſed by Seeds, Cuttings, and Layers, and requires ſome artificial helps to ſupport its weak Branches; there are three kinds of theſe, the ſmalleſt is called *Cytiſus ſecundus Cluſii.* 14. *Spaniſh Broom.*

Not much unlike to the yellow Jaſſemine is the *Spaniſh Broom*, only its Flowers are like our ordinary Broom, as are the Cods, only larger: It flowers in *May*, and is increaſed by Seeds and Suckers.

The

15. *Virgins Bower.* The double *Virgins Bower* is a climbing Tree, fit to cover ſome place of Repoſe, or to be ſupported by Props for that purpoſe; it bears many dark blew double Flowers in *July*, *Auguſt*, and until the Cold prevents them: You may cut off moſt of the ſmalleſt Branches in the Winter, it ſhoots early, and ſpreads very much in a Summer; it is eaſily increaſed by Layers.

There are of them ſingle, both purple and red, but this double is to be preferred.

16. *Woodbinds.* The *Honey-ſuckle*, eſpecially either of the more generous kinds of it, is a Plant which though vulgar, yet deſerves our Pains in propagating it. The double and the red are the moſt choice, and are eaſily propagated by Layers.

17. *Periploca.* *Periploca* is a Plant that twiſts it ſelf about a Pole as doth the Hop, it lives over the Winter, and yearly puts forth ſmall blew Bloſſoms, is increaſed by Layers, and entertained in *Gardens* only for variety ſake, and not for its beauty.

18. *Althea Frutiçoſa.* Of the *Shrub Mallow*, there are two ſorts, the Purple and the White, they endure the Winter, are uſually planted Standards, bring forth their Flowers in *Auguſt* and *September*, until the Wet or Cold prevent them; the Tree is increaſed by Layers. The Bloſſoms reſemble the Bloſſoms of a Mallow, whence it hath its Name, and is a fair Autumnal Ornament to your *Garden*, for it buds and blows very late in the Year.

Hyper-

Hypericum Frutex is a Shrub yielding abundance of small slender shoots, which in *May*, are very thick set with small white Blossoms, that the Tree seems to be all hoary with Frost, or covered with snow: it is increased by Suckers, and endures all Weathers, and very well becomes the choicest *Gardens*. 19. *Hypericum. Frutex.*

There is a sort of *Peach-Tree*, yielding double Flowers fair and beautiful, deserves a place under your Wall. 20. *Double flower'd Peach Tree.*

The like there is of *Cherries*, a sort that bears a fair white Blossom very double, but yielding no Fruit as doth that of the *Peach*, yet a welcome Plant to a good Florist. 21. *Double flower'd Cherry.*

There are Apple Trees and Pear Trees, that yield double Flowers, but they are not so much regarded.

Thus by propagating and preserving such Flower-bearing Trees and Shrubs, may you have your *Garden* and *Groves* replete, with great variety of curious Flowers from the end of *January*, when the hardy *Mezerion* exposes its several coloured sweet scented Blossoms to your view, until the cruel Frosts and Winds check the Monthly Rose, *Althea, frutiosa, Virgins Bower*, and white *Jassemine*; and so throughout the whole Summer between those two extreams, and that without the trouble of removing, altering, shading, skreening from Cold or other Inconveniencies, which most other Flowers are subject unto, and are therefore much rather to be preferred; yet if you are willing to undergo the little trouble of defending

defending the *Monthly Roses* or *White Jasse-mines*, you may have blossoms from these later, and *Roses* even until *Christmas*.

CHAP. III.

Of Bolbous-rooted Flowers.

NExt unto the *Flower-bearing Trees* are those of Bulbous-roots to be preferred, for their easie propagation and management, and durableness in all seasons hot and cold.

SECT. I.

Of Tulips.

OF all Bulbous-rooted Flowers the *Tulip* hath obtained, and not undeservedly, the preference, yielding so great a Variety, that they are not here to be enumerated, every year producing new Flowers. Nor is it all the words I can invent, can convince you of the beauty of these Glories of Nature, but must refer you to the choice your self, or Friend for you, can make out of that Magazine of Varieties that are collected by the ingenious Florists. Their

Their Colours are various, from the deepeſt dy of any other Flowers to the pureſt White, intermixt with the brighteſt Yellow, tranſcendent Scarlet, grave Purple, and many other compounds of theſe inclining to the Blew and Green.

Many double *Tulips* are now raiſed, whereof there is ſome variety.

Their Seaſon of blowing continues long, the *Præcoces* or *early Tulips*, beginning ſome of them to blow at the Vernal Æquinox, the *Medias* which are the prime, continue all *April*, and ſometimes the half of *May*, till the end whereof the *Serotines* or late flowring *Tulips* continue.

When the principal of them diſplay their Colours in the heat of the day, there is not a more glorious ſight in Nature, nor is it to be imitated by Art, no Limner, nor Painter dares pretend to ſo great skill: But as all things elſe that are in exceſs are ſooneſt apt to decline, ſo theſe that exceed all others in beauty and luſtre, ſooneſt fade; not any of them continuing in its Glory above eight or ten days, unleſs the mildneſs of the Weather, or ſome artificial ſhade preſerve them; nor are they ſucceeded by any other from the ſame root.

Tulips are not only preſerved by taking them up yearly, when the ſtalks are turning yellow, or begin to be dry, but are by that means multiplied and increaſed exceedingly. The uſual way is to take them up at that convenient time, and ſpread them thin on ſome board or

floor

floor until they are thorough dry, then cut off the ſtalks, and ſo let the roots lye in ſome box or boxes, or other convenient places until *September*, or *October*, in a dry place, but not in the Sun or Wind; then ſeparate the main Bulbs from the leſſer Chives, taking all that are large (and round though ſmall) for Roots that will yield you Flowers the next year, and ſet them in the places appointed for them, but let the ground be digg'd or otherwiſe looſened, that the Root may the better dilate it ſelf and encreaſe, for in a narrow or ſtiff hole, your Root will remain till the next year as you left it.

It is not good to take them up after they have ſhot their Fibres or ſmall Springs, until after they have flower'd, leaſt it hinders their flowring, and perhaps periſh them.

When you plant them, ſtick into the ground by them ſmall ſticks marked with the numeral Letters, which you may do *ad infinitum*, and in a ſmall Book for that purpoſe, may you inſert the mark and name of the Flower.

When you take them up and diſperſe them into Boxes or other Receptacles, you may tranſfer the marks with them.

The ground you plant them in, ought not to be too luxurious, this *Noble Flower* is content with a little Room and poor Soyl.

In the worſt Mold this Flower better thrives,
And barren Earth miraculouſly gives.

More

More beauty to it, than a fertile ground,
And when leaſt ſtrong, it is moſt comely found,

The vulgar field or hazle Earth, with a little mixture of Sand in it is the beſt, for the richneſs of the Soyl cauſes them to run (as they term it) into dark and plain Colours. But if your ground be naturally rich, or that your *Tulips* have grown ſeveral years in it, you may abate it, and ſupply it with that which is fit, or lay a bed of ſandy Earth about a finger thickneſs below the bulb, when it is in its proper place, that ſo the Fibres may receive a check. *Tulips* may be raiſed in *January* and *February* on hot beds, but they muſt be the *Præcoces* that are to flower early.

Some preſcribe to plant your *Tulips* in a natural Earth ſomewhat impoveriſhed with Sand, ſo that a little below the root the Earth may be better within reach of the Fibres.

If the ground be digg'd where your *Tulips* ſtood the laſt year, it is equal to a change of Mould, the roots rarely falling into the ſame Earth again where they were before.

Your ſmall Cions or Off-ſets you may plant in a Bed by themſelves, which will furniſh you at another time with great variety.

As *Tulips* run or degenerate, take them up and plant them in your outward Groves, your prime Colours will multiply faſt enough.

Tulips that are apt to decline towards a ſadder Colour, may be taken up a little before they come to flower, and laid in the Sun to abate

bate their luxury, which will make them come better the year following.

From such *Tulips*, that have their *Tamis*, (that is the seed-like things that stand up about the Seed-Vessel) and bottoms of dark Colours, and their Seed-Vessel three square, may Seeds be obtained when they are thorough (ripe in *June* or *July*, that may after a long expectation afford you great variety of Flowers. These Seeds may be sown in *September*, and every two years removed until they yield Blossoms; but this labour and patience are too great for an ingenious, and fit only for a dull *Florist*.

The often removing of the roots of *Tulips* and their Off-sets into various ground, gives you a great encrease, and great variety of Colours, without that tedious way of raising them.

It is not good to let a *Tulip* stand too long after it hath blown, lest by weakning the root it may prevent its blooming the next year.

2. *Of Fritillaries.*

The next of kin to the *Tulip* is the *Fritillary*, whereof there is some variety, as the white, yellow, red, dark coloured, some of them checquered, and thence called the checquered *Tulip*, but the double is the most rare, their seasons and manner of ordering much like that of the *Tulip*, only the dry Roots ought to be planted about the beginning of *August*.

SECT.

SECT. II.

Of Hyacinths and Star-Flowers.

THE *Hyacinths* are all bulbous rooted, except the tuberous rooted *Indian Hyacinth*, which we reserve for the Conservatory. The sorts of them that are termed Muscaries or Grape-flowers, whereof there are many diversities, as yellow, ash-coloured, red, white, blew, and sky-coloured, are pretty things, and may for variety-sake, but not for their beauty be planted.

But there are other varieties of them, as the *fair hair'd branched Jacinth*, the *fair curled hair'd Jacinth*, the blew, white, and blush, *starry Hyacinth* of *Peru*, and the blew Lilly-leaved *starry Hyacinth*, that yield fair Flowers on large Stalks that adorn your *Garden* and Flower-pots. These flower in *May* and may be removed in *August*, they lose not their Fibres, and are therefore not to be kept long out of the ground.

There are several sorts of them that lose their Fibres, and may be kept longer out of the ground, and are to be preferr'd to the other, for that they come early in the year from *February* until *April*, and are very sweet and well coloured.

The principal whereof is the great Orien-

tal *Hyacinth*, called *Zimbul Indi*, or *Pas toot*, or *Celestial Hyacinth*, from its fair Blossoms.

Some are more double, as well white as blew, and therefore are to be esteemed, the vulgar are some white, some of a cream colour, others of a deep blew, and some of a pale, but all are very becoming a *Garden* in the Spring of the year, before they are over-matched with Flowers of a nobler hue.

Of Star-flowers.

The neareſt of kin unto the *Hyacinths*, are the *Star-flowers*, whereof some of them are valuable, as the *Ornithogalum Arabicum*, or *Star-flowers* of *Arabia*, which flowers in *May*; the great white *Star* of *Bethlehem* in *June*; the *Star-flower* of *Naples* in *April*, and the *Æthiopian* in *Auguſt*: Theſe of *Arabia* and *Æthiopia* are tender, and coming out of ſo hot Countries, will not endure our ſevere Winters, therefore their Bulbs muſt be planted in rich warm Earth in Boxes or Pots, and ſecured in Winter from Froſts.

SECT. III.

Of Daffodills.

THE *Narciſſus* is a Flower ſo well known, that its needleſs to ſpend many words on it, but for its great variety, bright colour, and early flowring, the better kind of them deſerve to be planted here and there under your

your *Groves* and *Avenues*, and other *Shades* where they proſper very well, and waſte no ground: they are hardy Plants, and multiply much, ſome of them are white and ſweet ſcented, blowing late in the Spring; ſome are ſingle, others double, and others very double, ſome bear many Flowers on a Stalk, others but one; ſo that from the end of *February* to the beginning of *May*, they furniſh you with Flowers for your Pots.

The *Junquils* are of the ſame kinds and afford ſome variety, and flower much about the ſame time with the Daffodils.

The *Leucoium* or Bulbous-Violet is reckoned amongſt the Daffodils; it is ſometimes called the *Snow-drop*, becauſe it ſhews its Snow-white Flowers ſometimes in *January*, and generally not long after, for which early blowing it is eſteemed.

SECT. IV.
Of Lillies.

UNder this Name have been of old many famous Flowers. Some imagine the moſt illuſtrious *Tulip* was once intended by it, when *Solomon*'s Glory was eſteemed inferior to one of them; but there is little reaſon for that opinion: for in *Pliny*'s time, near about the time of our Saviour's being upon Earth, the *Lilly* was in great eſteem; than which, no Flower was more in requeſt in the choiceſt

Gardens, except the *Roſe*, which *Solomon* himſelf admired as well as the *Lilly*; and then the *Tulip* was but a hedge Flower, and ſo remains in the *Aſian* Continent, as is reported: Neither is there any Flower of that tranſcendent whiteneſs (an Emblem of Purity and Innocency) as the *Lilly*.

But there are of ſeveral Colours and Seaſons, Flowers that are of that Family: As for the Spring the *Crown Imperial*, ſingle and double, orange-coloured, red and yellow, they are but dull Flowers.

Crown Imperial.

Then there are the vulgar *Red Lilly*; ſingle and double, whereof only the double is worthy your notice.

Red Lilly.

The *White Lillies*, both ſingle and double, are planted in moſt *Gardens* for their Colour, and the uſe of their Roots, which in *Pliny*'s time added much to the reputation of the Plant.

White Lilly.

Of *Martagons* there is great diverſity, the *Imperial*, the *White*, *white ſpotted*, *Red* and *red ſpotted*, *Yellow* and *yellow ſpotted*, with divers other variations, but none of great value.

Martagon.

SECT.

SECT. V.

Of Saffron Flowers.

THE *Colchicums* or *Meadow Saffron*, ſo termed, being firſt taken out of the Meadows. Theſe Flowers are called *Naked Boyes*, becauſe they appear naked out of the Earth, and are withered and gone before the green leaves appear. *Of the Colchicum.*

Of theſe *Colchicums* there is ſome variety beſides the plain colour, ſome ſtriped, others chequered, whereof the *Colchicum Chio* is the moſt beautiful, but the double is the more ſplendid, gracing your *Garden* in the Autumn when moſt other Flowers are faded. All theſe variegated and double Flowers are to be eſteemed for that they come ſo late in the year, and make a delicate medly: they put forth their green leaves early in the Spring following, and when thoſe wither they may be taken up and encreaſed, and replanted about the end of *Auguſt* following.

The *Crocus* or *Saffron-flower*, ſo called from its reſembling that Plant in Root, Leaf, and Flower. There are great variety of theſe Flowers, and much variegated or ſtriped with White, Yellow, and Purple, their three principal Colours. *Of the Crocus.*

They bring forth their pleaſant, but ſhort Bloſſoms in *February* and *March*; there are ſome of them *Autumnal* that flower in *September* and *October*, as doth the true Saffron: the Roots are taken up when the Leaves wither, and planted again about a Month or two before their flowring time: they increaſe very much, and adorn the edges of Borders, or cloſe under Walls or Pales.

SECT. VI.

Of ſeveral other bulbous rooted Flowers.

Of the Moly. THere are ſeveral other bulbous rooted Flowers, which for variety are to be entertained, as the *Moly*, whereof there are many different ſorts that are in flower in *May*, *June*, and *July*, and ſerve to mix in your Flower-pots and Chimnies: they are planted and increaſed as other hardy Bulbs.

Of Aſphodils. The *Aſphodils* are of no great beauty; but may be planted and increaſed as other Bulbs for their variety.

Of Spider-wort. As may the *Phalangium* or *Spider-wort*, whereof there are the White and the Blew, ſome flower in *May* and *June*, but the Blew in *Auguſt* and *September*.

Of Corn-flags. *Gladiolus* or *Corn flagg*, there are ſeveral ſorts, Red and white, and ſerve only for Flower-pots and Chimnies, are hardy, and to be

be planted and increaſed as the other Bulbs.

Of the *Satyrions*, or *Bee-flowers*, or *Gnat-flowers*, there is ſome diverſity, they are taken out of the Fields and Meadows, are very beautiful where they are remote from the place of their extraction, they are very tender, and therefore are cautiouſly to be removed, they are to be taken up Earth and all, unleſs you can obſerve to find them when dry, you muſt endeavour to plant them in ground connatural to that from whence they came. *Of the Orchis.*

The *Doggs-tooth Violet*, ſo called from the likeneſs of its Bulb to *Dogs-tooth*, there are of them Purple, Red, White, and Yellow, they are much in eſteem being brought far, and difficult to be obtained, not increaſing in this Country; they are planted in good natural (not dunged) Soil, about the middle of *Auguſt*, and flower in *March*. *Of Dens Caninus.*

The *Cyclamen* or *Sowbread* for their curious and odoriferous Bloſſoms, are received in the *Gardens* of the beſt *Floriſts*. *Of the Cyclamen.*

The Grecian Cyclamen *from far they bring,*
The Red and White both flouriſh in the Spring. Rapinus.

Some ſorts of them alſo flower in the Autumn, and one or other of theſe Beauties adorn your *Garden* from *April* to *October*.

Their Roots do not loſe their Fibres, and are therefore difficultly removed, their time of removing is in *June* or *July*, or before their time of blowing. They are raiſed of Seeds

which must be sown, as soon as ripe, in Boxes, and then at two years end transplanted into your Garden, where they will endure any weather.

SECT. VII.

Of the Iris, Bulbous, and Tuberose.

Of the Bulbous Iris.

TO conclude this Chapter of *Bulbous*-rooted Flowers, I shall here insert the *Iris*, there being of them as well with Bulbous as Tuberose Roots, not that they are inferiour in beauty to any of those preceding, except the *Tulip*, but that I am unwilling to divide them whose Flowers retain the same Form, although they differ in their Roots.

Now Iris *strings which from the heavenly bow*
Is nam'd, and doth as many Colours show:
Its Species, and its Tinctures different are,
According to the Seasons of the Year.

Rapinus.

The Bulbous afford very great variety, some of them (as the *Persian*) flowering in *February* or *March*, others in *April*, *May*, *June*, and *July*. There are some of them very fair and beautiful, their Colours are either blew, Purple, Ash-coloured, Peach-coloured, Yellow, White, or Variegated. Their Roots may be taken up

up as ſoon as the Leaves begin to wither, for ſoon after they are quite withered, the Bulbs will iſſue out more Fibres, and then it is too late to remove them, otherwiſe you may keep them dry till *Auguſt*.

They delight in a good Ground, but not too rich, on a ſunny bank, but not too hot to the *South* or *Weſt*; the *Eaſtern* Aſpect is the beſt.

Thoſe *Flower-de-Luces*, with tuberous Roots, are not altogether ſo various as the Bulbous, yet affording to the ingenious Floriſt many curious Flowers, the beſt and moſt excellent whereof is the *Chalcedonian Iris*, vulgarly called the Toad Flag from its dark marbled Flower. This Species of them ought to be carefully ordered, elſe it will not thrive well, it requires a warm and rich Soil to be planted in, and becauſe it is apt to ſhoot forth its green Leaves before Winter, it expects to be a little defended from the Cold. Theſe Bulbs may be taken up when the Leaves begin to be dry, and kept ſome time in the houſe, and then replanted in *September*, or *October*, which will make them thrive the better. *Of the Tuberoſe Iris.*

The other ſorts of the *Tuberoſe* rooted *Flower-de-Luces*, are much more hardy, and increaſe exceedingly in good Ground, and are therefore not ſo fit for your choiceſt *Garden*.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of Tuberose Rooted Flowers.

AFter having passed over those curious Plants and Flowers, that are with the least Pains and Care to be planted, propagated and preserved, I shall now give you a brief Account of such that are a little more difficult to be managed, yet require they no more trouble than they sufficiently recompence with their most pleasant Flowers: The most select whereof is the *Anemone.*

SECT. I.

Of Anemones.

THE *Anemone,* which is a *Grecism,* signifying *Wind,* thence it is called the *Wind Flower,* for that it is observed never to open, but when the Wind blows, or at least in those Countries where it is naturally produced, it may have that property. It was in great esteem amongst the Ancients for the beauty of its Flowers mix'd in their *Chaplets* and *Garlands,* al-

although then there were not a tenth part of that variety of them, that now the curious have collected and propagated.

It is one of the Beauties of Nature, and the moſt excellent that Seaſon can afford, bearing ſuch different Flowers, that they make the cold *March* almoſt equal in Glory to the Summer, which is a wonder that ſuch ſoft *Flowers* and *Tyrian* and *Scarlet* Dyes ſhould be produced in ſo early a Seaſon, which are uſually the effects of a continued Calidity.

What angry Deity did firſt expoſe,
To the rough Tempeſts and more rigid Snows,
The ſoft Anemone, *whoſe comely Grace,*
A gentler Seaſon and a better place
Deſerves: for when with native purple bright,
It ſhews its Leaves to the propitious light,
With different Colours ſtrip'd and curled Flames,
Encompaſs'd it our love and wonder claims.
There is not any other that outvies
This Flower's curl'd Leaves or numerous Dyes,
Nor the Sidonian *Art could e're compoſe,*
So ſweet a bluſh as this by Nature ſhows. Rapinus.

As of the *Tulips*, ſo of theſe, the beſt way is to pleaſe your ſelf in your Election from the view of them. The uſual deſcriptions can never ſufficiently nor ſatisfactorily inform you of their real worth.

They are generally of two ſorts, broad leav'd *Anemones*, and narrow leav'd *Anemones*, thoſe with narrow leaves much reſemble Parſley,

ley, whence they were anciently called *Rose Parsley*, or the *Parsley Rose*.

The Soil wherein they delight must be fat and rich, manured with Sheeps dung, and Neats dung, with a little mixture of Lime, all thorowly rooted.

About the end of *September*, or beginning of *October*, you may plant your *Latifoles*, or broad leav'd *Anemones* about three fingers deep, and about a Month after your *Tenuifoles* or narrow leav'd *Anemones* which yield their Flowers after the other.

But if you design to have them more early, you may plant them sooner, and with Mats secure them against the Cold, and give them all advantages of the Sun and warm Rains, for the Frosts are very apt to nip their Leaves when above ground, and impede their flowering for that year.

If you desire *Anemones* to flower late, then keep them out of the ground as long as you can, some will abide out of the ground until *February* or *March*, and plant them in shady places, or artificially shade them. Thus you have *Anemones* after the usual natural time of flowering.

When their green Leaves turn yellow, or about the end of *June*, or in *July*, you may take them up and preserve the Roots dry, till the season for interring them, for after they have lost their Fibres, they are apt to perish by the humidity of the Earth: the place you keep them in ought to be cool as well as dry.

It

It is very injurious to the *Latifoles* to break their Roots, which ſhould only be parted as they are naturally apt to be divided, but the *Tenuifoles* will endure an eaſie Rupture or Sciſſure.

If you preſerve your *Anemone* Roots in a cool place, until the middle of *January*, and then plant them, they will be the more ſecure from the injuries of bad weather; much wet prejudiceth as well as ſevere cold.

As your *Anemones* are prejudiced by overmuch Wet, ſo do they require and deſerve a little irrigation in very dry Springs, and will ſufficiently gratifie you; a little ſhade will alſo advantage them in the hotteſt times of the day.

In *May* will theſe Flowers bear Seeds, which gathered and ſown in *July*, in good ſifted Earth, in Beds or Boxes, will produce great Varieties in the third or fourth year after.

Mix the down that contains the Seeds, with ſome fair dry Earth, and rub it together in a wooden Veſſel, and the Seeds will mix with the Earth, by which means you may ſowe them equally, be ſure to ſowe them not too thin.

After you have ſown your Seeds, ſift Earth upon them about half a finger in thickneſs, when they have been come up about a Month, ſift more Earth finely over them about half an inch, and cover them at ſome diſtance all the next Winter.

The

The *August* following, you may remove them into convenient Beds, where they may remain till they beat Flowers, at which time you may cull them as you please.

Forget not a gentle irrigation to your young *Anemones* in dry Weather, for it will much forward them, as will a little artificial shade at opportune seasons.

Of Ranunculus.

The *Ranunculus* or *Crowfoot*, being so near in resemblance to the *Anemone*, differ very little from them in their ordering.

They exceed all Flowers whatever in the richness of their Colours, nor is their any Flower so fine and fair, as are the larger sorts of them.

Their times of Flowering, taking up, and planting, are near about the same time as the *Anemones*, but they agree better with a richer Mould than the other.

They are not so apt to multiply their Roots, unless their Ground be rich and light; therefore it is by the most skilful prescribed, to lay a broad bed of old Thatch or almost rotten Straw, and on that to sift fine rich Earth six or eight inches thick, and therein to plant your *Ranunculus*'s, wherein they will thrive and increase.

If you plant them early in the Winter, they must be defended from the sharp Winds and Frosts, but if late, there is no necessity of it, they are somewhat more tender than the *Anemone*.

Irrigation

Irrigation in a dry ſeaſon, much advantages this Flower, as it doth the *Anemone.*

SECT. II.

Of Peonyes.

THis although a common Flower, yet yields the faireſt and moſt double Bloſſom of any, and very well becomes your Chimney or Flower-pots. But the *White, Purple,* and changeable *Peonyes* are acceptable in the *Gardens* of the beſt *Floriſts,* and the ſingle *Peonyes* in the Phyſick *Garden,* for their ſpecifical virtues of their Roots againſt the moſt dangerous of Diſeaſes.

The manner of their planting and ordering is known to moſt that have any intereſt in a *Garden,* only it is neceſſary to underſtand, that *September* and *October* are the fitteſt times for their tranſplantation.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of divers other Select Flowers.

SECT. I.

Of Gilliflowers.

NOtwithſtanding the *Flower-bearing Trees* are compleat Ornaments with little trouble; the *Bulbous* rooted Flowers ſo illuſtrious that they merit great eſteem from the moſt curious, being leſs ſubject to Caſualties than moſt others, and the *Tuberoſe* Roots yield ſuch incomparable Beauties in the Spring; yet muſt they concede to the *Gilliflower*, the pride of the Summer, that hath its ſcent as pleaſing as its variegations beautiful.

Lovely Carnations then their Flowers dilate,
The worth of them is, as their Beauty, great:
Their ſmell is excellent.—— Rapinus

Their Colours are not many, but infinitely and variouſly compounded, and being ſo eaſily and

and frequently raiſed of Seed, do annually produce new mixtures, and thoſe have impoſed on them new Names, that it is impoſſible to give you a true account of them; therefore it will be more proper for you to pleaſe your own fancy, or confide in the integrity of a *Gardener*, than to truſt to the lame deſcriptions you may meet withal, or to the florid Names that are given them, on purpoſe to beget your admiration of ſuch that little deſerve it.

Their times of Flowering are generally in *July* and *Auguſt*, ſometimes the early Buds may yield you Flowers in *June*, but their latter Buds in *September* and *October*, and by careful defending them in *November*.

The right *Dutch Gilliflowers* rarely produce Seed here, but when they do, you muſt preſerve it from wet till it be ripe, then gather it and lay it by in the Husk, until the Spring.

In *May*, after the cold Nights are ſpent, is a good time to ſowe theſe Seeds, which ought to be on good Earth, in ſome ſhady place where it may have the Morning or Evening Sun only.

They ſhould be ſown thin, and the Earth ſifted over it half a Finger thick.

In *Auguſt* or *September* following, you may remove them into their proper Beds, and the Summer following, they will inform you of their worth by their Flowers. The ſingle and poorer ſort reject, and thoſe that blow fair and whole, or are well marked, preſerve.

For the firſt Winter after ſowing them,

there is little danger of their being hurt by Cold, in that particular they are like the ſtock *Gilliflowers*, which in their firſt Winter are extream hardy, and in the ſecond very tender.

You may plant your beſt *Gilliflowers* in Pots filled with Earth for that purpoſe, that you may give them *Sun* or *Rain*, according to the Seaſon of the Year, and as they require.

Plant them not under a Wall or other Fence, that may reflect the heat of the *Sun* upon them, for they delight in an open Air, and not in intemperate Heat.

Great Rains, eſpecially in the Winter and Spring, prejudice them much, therefore you are to defend them from it equally as from Cold. Thoſe Flowers that are planted in Beds, and not in Pots, are to be defended from Wet and Cold as there is occaſion, by ſome Cover or Shelter to place over them, which muſt be open at the top, or on one ſide: The fitteſt for this occaſion, are old Bee-hives, with a Door of about a Span ſquare on the ſide that may be open off from the Weather, which you defend them againſt.

You may increaſe your Flowers by laying them in *June*, *July* and *Auguſt*, but in *June* or *July* is the beſt time, the method is thus: Firſt trim your Slip you intend to lay by clipping off the ſide Leaves, and topping the other, then with a ſharp Pen-knife cut a Tongue half through, from one of the middle Joynts under the Slip, to the next Joynt towards you, beginning next the Root, and cutting upwards, looſen

looſen the Earth under it, and with a ſmall hooked ſtick force it down, that the Tongue or Slit may open, and the end of the Slip point upwards, cover it with Earth, and water it, which irrigation muſt be reiterated according as the drought of the ſeaſon requires it.

If the Slips be ſo high that they cannot be bent to the Ground with eaſe, then take a ſmall Earthen Pot with a ſlit on the ſide, in which you may diſpoſe of your Slip as you deſire.

About a Month after, your Layers will have taken Root, then may you take them off with ſome of the adhering Earth, and plant them in their places prepared for them.

But if any ſhould not have taken root, you may anew lay them, and make the Cut a little deeper, and ſo let them remain till the Spring, and then you may plant them out as you ſee fit.

Plant your Layers not too deep, for thereby many a good Plant hath been ſpoiled.

A Cave or Pit made in ſome place in your *Garden*, would be very convenient to place your Pots of Flowers in, for there no Winds nor ſevere Froſts can annoy them, the driving Rains alſo cannot much offend them.

The Morning *Sun* is the moſt benign to your *Gilliflowers*; therefore you may defend your moſt choice from the Afternoon *Sun*, by ſome artificial Skreen, in caſe you have no place naturally poſited for that purpoſe: This to be done before, and in blowing time.

To have *Gilliflowers* or *Carnations* (as they are vulgarly termed from those ancient *English* Flowers that were usually of a Flesh Colour) during the most part of the Winter, they may be placed in Pots, in some convenient Room open to the *South*, and to be shut at pleasure to defend them from the Cold, unless to give them the benefit of the warm *Sun*; at Noon sometimes, or a little Southerly *Rain*, into which Room may be conveyed some warmth from your ordinary Fire, or else a Fire therein on purpose, I suppose a Lamp may be maintained burning at an easie Expence in a close Room, which may be sufficient to defend them from Frost, a constant though small Heat will effect much, the Lamp may also be enlarged as the Room or severity of the Weather requires; the smoak of the Lamp may be conveyed away by a Funnel over it for that purpose: thus may many other Rarities be preserved over the Winter at an easie Charge.

The Earth about your *Gilliflowers*, ought to be renewed once in two Years at the least, for by that time they have exhausted the better and more appropriated part of the Earth or Soyl.

Your Flower Pots ought to have holes in the bottom, to let out the superfluous moisture, and also in case you are willing to water your Flowers, you may dip the Pots half way into a Tub of Water prepared, the one after the other; and the Earth will attract the Water through the holes, which is much better than sprinkling.

If

If you have any *Gilliflowers* that are broken, ſmall, or ſingle, you may graff on them other *Gilliflowers* that are more choice, but graff them in the moſt woody part of the Stalk; the beſt way is by whip-graffing.

Pidgeons Dung being the hotteſt of Dungs, applied about the Roots of *Gilliflowers*, maketh them flower the more early.

To defend your *Gilliflowers* from the injury of Cold and Froſt, ſuch of them that are placed in Beds and not moveable; ſome have preſcribed to take two ſlender Wands or bending Sticks, and fix each end in the ground on each ſide of the Flower, that the Sticks may Arch-wiſe be acroſs over the Flower, which is ſaid to defend them by ſome Magical Vertue.

If your *Gilliflower* or Layer be inclinable to ſhoot up in the Summer with one ſingle ſtem, ſuffer it not to bloſſom that Year, but nip or cut the ſtalk off, leſt it give you a fair Flower and never thrive after.

Pinks though mean Flowers ſingly of themſelves, yet the common red ſingle ſort of them, planted on the edges of your Walks againſt the ſides of your Banks do not only preſerve your Banks from foundring, or mouldring down, but when in Bloſſom, are a very great Ornament, and moſt excellently perfume your *Garden*. *Of Pinks.*

Sweet Williams, *Sweet Johns*, and *London Pride*, are pretty Fancies, and near of kin to the old Engliſh *Gilliflower*. *Sweet Williams.*

SECT. II.

Of Stock-Gilliflowers and Wall-Flowers.

Stock-Gilliflowers.

THE *Lucoium* or *Stock-Gilliflower* is a Flower of much Beauty, delicate Scent, and some Variety; a good *Garden* cannot be said to be well stored without them, nor a Flower-pot well adorn'd without some of these; they continuing long in Blossom, from *April* till the Frost prevents them. They are generally raised of Seed, and the first Winter, because they have not yet spent their finer Spirits; they are very hardy and endure any Weather, but the next Winter they are very tender.

With curled Threads and top divided now,
Along the Margin of your Borders grow:
Stock-Gilliflowers, whose blushing Leaf may fear,
And justly too, the sharpness of the Air.

The double, whereof some are strip'd, and some plain, are very pleasant; but the double yield no Seed.

The single have generally four Leaves in a Blossom, but if there be five Leaves, the Seed thence produced, will bring double Flowers.

The white single usually produce double Flowers, as also do those that are strip'd with white.

The

The yellow double *Stock-Gilliflower* is the moſt rare of any.

The Seeds of thoſe kinds that uſually produce double Flowers, being often ſown in the ſame Soil, will degenerate into all ſingle, and by degrees into all plain Colours, as I have tryed. *Quare*, if they will do the ſame if ſown in barren Earth.

There is another ſort of *Double Stocks*, that are not raiſed from Seed, only by Slips and Layers, that is more durable than the Seedlings.

Thoſe raiſed of Seed will ſometimes abide the ſecond Winter if it be mild, or the Stocks well defended; if you take away the blowing Sprigs, the precedent Autumn, it will much further their duration.

They may be laid as other Plants are, and kept ſecure from violent Colds, will endure the Winter.

They may be planted out in Slips, if you take ſuch that are not ſpired to blow, and cut them from the Stock, and ſlit the end in three or four places about half an inch, and peel the Rind back as far as the Slit, and take away the inward Wood: then ſet this Slip with the Rind ſpread every way about two or three fingers deep, water it and ſhade it, until it hath taken Root; by this means may you maintain your ſtock of *Double Stocks*, without the two years expectation.

The Seeds from which you expect to have double Flowers, muſt be ſown at the full of

the Moon, or in two or three days after, and when come up four or five inches high, take them up and plant them out, which prevents their running up to ſtalk, which labour you may reiterate twice before Winter.

If you remove, water, and ſhade them every time to preſerve them, (it being a Summer work) and do it the firſt time three days after the Full, and twice more before the next Change, and again three days after the next Full, and once more before the ſucceeding Change, (all theſe removes to be in barren Ground.) Then at the third Full Moon, eight days after remove them again into rich Ground, wherein they are to ſtand. It is ſaid that it will make them bring forth double Flowers.

Sir Hugh Plat.

It hath been long obſerved that the Moon hath great influence over Plants, (over Animals it is very conſpicuous.) From *Pliny* to this day, moſt Authors have been of that Opinion. And if it hath any ſuch influence, then ſurely it is in the doubling of Flowers, for we daily obſerve that many ſorts of double Flowers will degenerate themſelves into ſingle, and that moſt of thoſe double we have (which are of the kinds uſually ſingle) are propagated by Art and Induſtry, and why may not the *Lunar* influence contribute much thereto? The *French* Poet was of that Opinion, although differing as to the time.

Till it be full Moon, from her first increase,
The Season's good; but if she once decrease,
Stir not the Earth, nor let the Husbandman,
Sowe any Seed; when Heav'n forbids 'tis vain.

The same Poet adds.

Some in preparing of their Seed excell,
Making their Flowers a larger compass swell;
Thus narrow Bolls with curled Leaves they fill,
Helping defective Nature by their skill.

Often removing them doth not only contribute to their worth, but duration.

The *Keiri* or *Wall-flowers*, so termed, for that the single kind naturally affect to grow on old Walls, and that the double need the assistance of some Wall or other support, are hardy Plants, though not altogether secure in the most severe Winters, and the better sort of them, that is, the *double white*, and the *double red*, very pleasant both to the Eye and Smell, they are easily increased by Slips and Layers.

SECT.

SECT. III.

Of Auricula's, Cowslips, and Primroses.

Of Auricula's.

BEars-ears or *Auricula's*, considering their size, are the finest Flowers the choicest *Garden* yields, affording a very great variety in Form as well as in Colour, and are not only beautiful to the Eye but pleasant in Scent.

In your election of them, it is better to trust your Eye, or confide in an honest *Gardner*, than in the lame descriptions of them, as before was hinted concerning the choice of *Tulips* and *Gilliflowers*, only that the double is the most rare, and the *Windsor Auricula* the most splendid of all the rest.

Of late years these Flowers are very much improved, not only for their great variety of plain Colours, and their bearing upright large Bunches of Blossoms, but for their many beautiful sorts of stripes they yield, that all the Colours that have been observ'd to be in that Flower plain, are now found to be mixed in the various sorts of stripes, that they are lately become the most beautiful Ornaments of the Spring. The greatest variety, and the most beautiful of these Flowers, as well as of *Tulips* and *Gillyflowers*, are to be seen in the *Garden* of the great Collector and Propagator of these and all other curious Plants and Flowers, Mr. *George Ricketts*

Ricketts of *Hogsden*, who supplies with them the best *Florists*.

They adorn your *Garden* in *April* and *May*, and some of them again about the end of *August*, and until the Frost prevent them.

If you crop off the Buds that offer to blow late in the *Autumn*, it will cause your *Auricula's* to yield you the fairer Flowers in the Spring.

They delight in rich Soyl and shady, but not under the drip of Trees.

They must be often removed, once in two years at least, and the Ground enriched, else they will decay.

The striped and double must be removed oftner, or else they will degenerate.

If you set them in Pots (which is the best way to preserve them) fill the Pots almost half full with sifted Neats-dung, the rest with a good light Mould enriched with the same Dung.

In the Winter place them in the Sun, but in the Summer in the Shade.

Defend them from wet in the Winter, but they endure all cold very well.

You may raise them from Seeds, by carefully gathering the Seeds, and preserving them in their Umbels till about *August* or *September*, when you must sow them in Boxes almost filled with the Mixture you made for the Plants, and about a Finger thick at the top with fine sifted willow Earth, or dryed Cow-dung, beaten small and mixed with the Earth, in which

sow

sow your Seeds mixt with Wood-ashes, then cover them with the same mixture of Earth sifted thereon, about *April* following they will come up, then may you plant them abroad, and they will yield you Flowers, some the *August* following, others the next succeeding year.

Cowslips. There are sown very pleasant *Cowslips* of several shades of Red, the *hose in hose*, the *green Cowslip*, and the *double Cowslip*, that are worth your planting, they are very hardy, and must be sometimes removed, or they are apt to degenerate.

Primroses. The same is observed of the Primroses, which yield the like variety of Colours, and are entertained for their early welcoming in the Spring.

On a broad Leaf the Primrose first will blow.

SECT. IV.

Of the Lilly of the Valley and Hellebor.

Lilly of the Valley. THE *Lilly Convat* although wild in some places Northward (as many fine Plants are in one place or other) is yet entertained in many good *Gardens* for its rich scent, almost equalling the *Orange-flower*, the use of this excellent Flower in several preparations, and its specifick properties and vertues in some Diseases,

ſeaſes, makes it the more acceptable, it is eaſily propagated from Plants, is hardy and delights in the ſhade.

The black *Hellebor* flowereth about *Chriſtmas*, and for that cauſe only is reſpected and not for its Beauty: the beſt ſort of white *Hellebor* with red Flowers, is a Plant in great repute amongſt *Floriſts*, its Leaves making alſo a comely ſhew, and flowers in *April* and *May*. *Hellebor.*

Our *Ladies-ſlipper* (an *Helleborine*) is much valued by moſt *Floriſts*, although wild in many places of the *North* of *England*, it is probable, by reaſon of its Name occaſioned by the likeneſs its Bloſſom hath to a Pantofle or Slipper. *Calceolus Mariæ.*

It yieldeth its Flowers early in the Summer, is a hardy Plant in reſpect of Cold, but not very apt to be increaſed.

SECT. V.

Of the Hepatica, Gentianella and Dittany.

THE *Hepatica* or *Liverwort* is a very pleaſant humble Flower, never riſing high, yet yielding its variety of pretty Bloſſoms in *March*; the double and the white are moſt regarded, and do deſerve your labour and care, which is not much, to plant and propagate them. *Hepatica.*

The

Gentianella. The *Gentianella* is another very low Plant yielding in *April* and *May* many blew Flowers of a deep dy, and are therefore regarded by most *Florists.*

Dittany. *Fraxinella* or *Dittany* is a hardy Plant, annually furnishing you with tall Stalks full of not unpleasant Flowers in *June* and *July*, and is raised by Plants or Seeds.

CHAP. VI.

Of Flowers raised only from Seed.

THE great diversity of Flowers we have hitherto had the pleasure to name, may be propagated by divers other ways according to their respective Natures, than by Seed; but there yet remain several Flowers not unworthy your care, that are raised by no other means than by Seed, as the *Larkes-heels* or *Larkes-spurs*, whereof the *Tipt Rose Larkspur* is the prime, is a very pretty Flower and well becomes your Walks in *July* and *August*, or early if sown before Winter and defended from the most severe Frosts: They are generally sown in *April*; the last will degenerate being often sown in the same Ground.

Lark-spurs.

Columbines. The variety of *Columbines* single and double, plain and strip'd, makes them acceptable in a good

good *Florist's Garden*; they are sown in the Spring, the young Plants endure the Winter, and the next year they yield their Flowers. The Roots will continue three or four years, these will also degenerate unless the Seed be changed.

Of Poppies. There is no Flower can be more glorious than the Poppy, were it as good as great, and as sweet as well coloured, and as lasting as it is nimble in growth, but their ill smell and soon fading, makes them the less regarded.

Of Holly-hocks. The *Holly-hocks* far exceed the *Poppies* for their durableness, and are very ornamental, especially the double, whereof there are various Colours; the black or dark colour'd *Holly-hock* is esteem'd the best; they are sown one year and flower the next; they may be removed in *August* or *September*, from your Seminary into their proper places of growth, which should be near some shelter from the Winds because of their height.

Of Snap-dragons. The *Antirrhinum*, *Snap-dragon*, or *Calves-snout*, so called from the form of its Blossom, is sown in *Gardens*, because it flowers long, and will grow in any place, as on Walls, *&c.* and serves for Chimneys and Flower-pots, else it is (in a *Garden*) of no great beauty nor smell.

Of the Sultan's Flower. The *Musk Scabious* is one of the species of *Scabious* or *Blew-bottles*, and so named from its most pleasant scent, and called the *Sultan's Flower*, because the *Grand Seignior* affected to wear it in his *Turbant*.

This

This, though mean to the eye, yet, is a Plant worthy of place among your choiceſt Flowers; in kind years and good ground it will come up, being ſown in *April*, and flowers in *Auguſt*: You may for the more certainty raiſe it in a hot Bed; it is alſo ſaid, that if it be ſown in *Auguſt*, the Plants will endure the Winter, and blow fair the next year.

Of Amaranthus. The *Amaranthus purpureus* is a fine delicate Plant, bearing ſuch curious Tufts of ſeveral Colours, like unto Silks dyed in Grain. The Seeds being ſown in a hot Bed in *March*, and then raiſed under Glaſſes in the hotteſt place of your *Garden*, and often irrigated, will produce thoſe Tufts in *Auguſt* and *September* following, and to deſerve your care as much as any Plant.

Of Marigolds. Of *Marigolds* there are divers ſorts beſides the common, as the *African Marygold*, a fair large *Yellow Flower*, but of a very naughty ſmell, and another ſort much fairer of the ſame colour and of little or no ſavour at all, and for that reaſon is received into ſome good *Gardens*. They are raiſed of Seed ſown in *April*, by ſome in a hot Bed, but they will in a ſeaſonable Spring thrive well enough without, and yield their beautiful Flowers in *Auguſt* and *September* following.

Of Bindweed. The *Greater Convolvulus* is raiſed by Seed in the Spring, and more certainly in a hot Bed, they twine about ſticks of about half a yard high, and yield their bright blew Flowers

wers in *August* and *September*, they blow in the Evening, and the next Morning the Sun withers them, but the Bloſſoms renew every Evening till the Froſts prevent them, they are a comely Evening Ornament to a *Garden*.

The *Marvail of Peru*, ſo termed from its wonderful variety of Flowers on the ſame Root, it is in many things like the *Convolvulus*, and is by ſome called the *Flower of the Night*, it is more tender than the other, and is therefore to be raiſed in a hot Bed. *Of the Marvail of Peru.*

It is obſerved that the Flowers of the *Marvail of Peru*, that are of one Colour, produce Seed, the Flowers whereof will alſo be but of one Colour. Therefore if you would have variable Flowers you muſt take the Seed from ſuch Flowers that be variable, and ſow them apart from the other.

Lupines are here ſown in *Gardens* annually for the ſake of their Flowers; but in *Italy* an ordinary pulſe ſown in the Fields for Food for their Cattel, and in thoſe hotter Countries they have a property, as *Pliny* relates, of turning their Flowers and keeping their courſe with the Sun, whether the Air be cloudy or clear, and that they ſerve inſtead of Clocks or Dials for the time of the day, and by ſome other Motions, as Prognoſticks for the Husbandmen to judge of the Weather. But in theſe colder parts we propagate them meerly for Flowers, which are the greater and the leſſer blew, the white, and the yellow, which laſt is regarded the more for its ſweetneſs. *Of Lupines.*

Of the Scarlet Bean.

There is a ſort of *Kidney Bean* that yields a fine ſcarlet Bloſſom, for which it is eſteemed.

Of the Everlaſting Peaſe.

The *Peaſe everlaſting* is ſo called, becauſe although it be firſt raiſed of Seed, yet it annually produces new Branches, which furniſhes you with many Bloſſoms of a reddiſh colour, and are not unbecoming a good *Garden*.

Of the Senſible Plant and Humble Plant.

The *Senſible Plant*, ſo called, by reaſon that as ſoon as you touch it the Leaf ſhrinks up together, and in a little time dilates it ſelf again. And the *Humble Plant*, ſo called, becauſe ſo ſoon as you touch it, it proſtrates it ſelf on the ground, and in ſhort time elevates it ſelf again, are both of them raiſed in hot Beds, and preſerved with great care, being the moſt tender *Exotick*s we have.

Noli me tangere.

Although the two laſt yield no Flowers, yet deſerve a place in your *Garden*, and here in this Tract; and becauſe they ſhall not be alone, I will conclude this Chapter with an odd Plant called *Noli me tangere*, becauſe when its pods are groſs and not fully ripe, if you offer to take either of them between your fingers, it will fly in pieces, and cauſe the unwary to ſtartle at the ſudden ſnap and ſurprize; this Plant is annually raiſed from Seeds, and only for Fancy propagated.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Of ſome more Vulgar Flowers.

THere are many Flowers that either for ſcent or ſhew are raiſed in the more ordinary Country *Gardens*, that ſeveral *Floriſts* have taken a great deal of pains and care exactly to deſcribe, and the Manner and Method of propagating them, which here ſhall only be named, As the *Aconites* or *Wolfbane*, *Pilewort*, *Crowfoot*, *Batchelors-Button*, *Marſh-Marigold*, *Hollow-root*, *Monks-hood*, *Cranes-bill*, *Bell-flowers*, *Champions*, *Nonſuch* or *Flower of Briſtol*, *Princes-feather* or *Common Amaranthus*, *Dames Violet* or *Queens Gilliflowers*, *Rockets*, *Double-Pellitory*, *Double-Featherfew*, *Double Camomil*, *Double Dog-Fennil*, *Double Lady-ſmocks*, *Double Daiſies*, *Toad-Flax*, *Fox-gloves*, *Grove-Thiſtles*, *Scabious*, *Blew-bottles*, *Moth-Mullens*, *Nigella* or *Fennel-Flower*, *Thorny-Apple*, *Balſame Apple*, *Apple of Love*, *Candy Tufts*, *Snail-flowers*, *Satten-flower*, and *Flower of the Sun*: Theſe every *Colona* knoweth how to plant, ſow, or propagate.

CHAP. VIII.

Of ſuch tender Exotick Trees, Flowers, and Plants, that require the Floriſts *care to preſerve them in the Winter.*

TO compleat your Pleaſure, and make your *Garden* an Object of Delight, which is generally placed on rare or unuſual Subjects, as well as on vulgar Beauties, you may make it capable of nouriſhing and preſerving ſuch natural Curioſities that cannot endure to be expoſed to the *rough*, *fierce*, *ſevere*, and *cruel Blaſts* that *Boreas* uſually emits into our *Engliſh Eden*. And have therein your *Brumal* as well as your *Æſtival*, *Odoriferous* Flowers, and pleaſant Greens, that nothing may be wanting in your terreſtial Paradiſe, that Induſtry and Coſt may obtain.

SECT.

SECT. I.

Of Perennial Greens, and such Plants that cannot endure cold.

AS in the former part of this Treatise we began at the more hardy *Winter Greens*, so here it will be not unproper to observe the same order. And as there we named the famous *Cypress* first, so here shall we begin with the most beloved odoriferous *Myrtle*, so highly esteem'd by the *Romans*, the great Admirers of Rarities, before the Foundation of *Rome*: That the sweet perfume thereof when burn'd, became an Attonement for the Offence the *Romans* had committed in ravishing the *Sabine* Virgins. And its Sacred Branches (being first consecrated I suppose) were sufficient to purifie them from so Venial a Sin. In memory of which Offence, and Satisfaction, on that very place the zealous *Romans* then erected a Sacred Temple dedicated to *Venus Cloacina*, the Goddess of such Pleasures, and Patroness of the innocent *Myrtle*. *Myrtle* Trees were also by the same *Romans* planted and propagated as Omens or Prognosticks of good or evil to their State and Government. So superstitious were they ever esteemed.

Of the Myrtle.

Cloacina.

In *Pliny's* time there was an old Temple and Altar that had been consecrated to *Venus Myrtea*.

Cato mentioned the Conjugal *Myrtle*, which *Pliny* ſuppoſes to have proceeded from that which was dedicated to *Venus Cloacina*, and uſed it ſeems in their Marriages.

Pliny attributes a ſtrange effect to it, that if a man hath a great journey to go on foot, and carry in his hand a Stick or Rod of the *Myrtle* Tree, he ſhould not be weary, nor think his way long and tedious: It's probable its operations are more vigorous in ſuch places where it naturally delights, than here where a kind of force is put upon it. But we here in *England* can ſecond this Vertue in that of an *Elder-ſtick*, which if a young Horſeman carry in his pocket, although he ride hard and far, yet ſhall he not be galled; as ſome affirm.

There are ſeveral ſorts of *Myrtles* here known in *England*, there is the broad leav'd *Myrtle*, and the narrow leav'd *Myrtle*, both very fine ſweet ſmelling Shrubs; but the moſt elegant is that which in the *Autumn* affords ſuch plenty of double white Bloſſoms, being a Plant very worthy the care of the moſt ingenious *Floriſt*, and are not ſo great a vexation as delight, whatever Mr. *Rea*'s opinion is, *Rapinus* ſeems to be of another.

Deſpiſe not humbler Plants, for they no leſs,
Than Trees, your Gardens *Beauty do increaſe.*
With what content we look on Myrtle-*Groves!*

They are not ſo tender but an eaſie defence will make them endure hard Winters. I have known

known many Trees planted on borders, endure ſeveral Winters, that have not been over ſevere, and never in the greateſt extremity required but a Tilt from the Wind and Snow.

The Plants produced from Layers are the moſt hardy, thoſe from Seeds the moſt tender, the ſame it is with moſt odoriferous Herbs, as *Thyme, Marjerom, Hyſop*, &c.

If planted in Pots or Boxes they are eaſily removed into your more open *Green Houſes*, or *Vaults*.

There is a ſort of *Myrtle* with a large Leaf called *Spaniſh Myrtle*, that will endure all Weather without ſhelter. *Of the Indian Jaſſemine, and Spaniſh Jaſſemine.*

There are the *Indian yellow*, and the *Spaniſh white Jaſſemines* that are very curious Shrubs, and yield moſt fragrant Flowers, equalling almoſt the *Orange-flowers*, and deſerve a place in your more open *Green Houſe* or *Vault*, where a mean defence will preſerve them from the too great ſeverity of the Winter.

Cytiſus Maranthe lunatus, is a Plant ſown as ordinarily in the *Aſian* Territories, as common Pulſe are here, and is both Branch and Seed, the beſt Food for all their Cattel, and is a great encreaſer of Milk in Beaſts as well as in Women, but here with us preſerved as a rarity in Pots or Caſes, and ſo to be diſpoſed in great Colds into the Conſervatory. *Of Cytiſus lunatus.*

The *Orlander* or *Roſe-bay*, is a Plant bearing ſome of them bluſh, and ſome white Flowers, and will proſper if ſecured from the moſt violent cold, as the other beforementioned Plants are. *Orlander.*

Indian Bay. The same may be said of *Laurus Indica*, although as yet a great stranger.

Maracoc. The *Maracoc*, usually termed the Passion-flower, from the Thorns and pointed Leaves it hath, representing the Thorns wherewith our Saviour was Crowned, and Nails wherewith he was nailed to the Cross, as the Authors of the name imagined.

This Plant increaseth much by Cions naturally growing from it, and if the Root be preserved from the extremity of the Frost, it will yield many beautiful Flowers yearly in *August*.

Snails as naturally affect this Plant, as they do the fruit of the *Nectarine* Tree, and as Cats do the *Marum Syriacum*, and therefore care must be taken to defend it from them.

Star-flower of Arabia, and of Æthiopea. *Ornithogalon* or the *Star-flower* of *Arabia*, which yieldeth a beautiful Flower in *May*, as that of *Æthiopea* in *August*, must be preserved as the other Plants.

Indian Reed, and Indian Fig. The *Indian flowring* Reed, if often watered and secured in the *Winter*, yields store of Flowers, but the *Indian Fig* is a very low Plant growing one Leaf on another, and is therefore called *Leaf upon Leaf*, and only preserved in the Winter for the rarity of it, no Plant in Nature being like it.

Cistus Mas. The *Male Cistus* is a Plant of no great esteem, yet preserved for the rarity thereof, as is the *Cistus Ledon*.

The

The *Indian Fuoca* not only affordeth us its sharp pointed Flag like Leaves, but sometimes its beautiful Flower, and is preserved only for the rarity thereof, and usually prescribed to be defended from the Winter cold, but by some affirmed to endure the most severe Weather. *Fuoca.*

Periploca or *Virginian Silk*, of little value, is much of the same nature, for the defence of those Plants which only suffer in extream Colds; a slight Shelter may serve, either as they stand abroad in their proper places, or by removing them into some *Garden*-House, not so close as the Conservatory for the more tender Plants ought to be. *Virginian Silk.*

Or a Vault or Cave may be made a little within the surface of the Earth, about the edges whereof may be disposed as you think fit your several Pots or Boxes.

Or you may sink a hole for each single Pot or Box, so that the Plant may be a little below the surface of the ground, over which an ordinary Shelter from the Wet may serve, or if you sink it deeper, it will defend your Plant the better.

For as the Earth in the Summer preserves Plants, or what else you place therein, cool from the scorching Rayes of the *Sun*, so doth it from the extremity of Cold in the Winter: Neither hath the Wind, or Morning Air in that Season, so great an advantage over a Plant thus posited, as it hath if it be on a level.

SECT.

SECT. II.

Of such Plants that least endure the Cold.

OTher Plants there are whose descent have been from a more hot Climate, and are of themselves of a more tender Nature, than the other before mentioned.

Of the Orange. Whereof the *Orange-Tree* is the most principal, and deservedly in great esteem, not only for its Beautiful (though acid) Fruit, but for its most fragrant Flowers, of which is made so rich an Essence, and whose distilled Water is of so transcendent Vertues, that they will sufficiently recompence your diligence and care in nourishing and preserving the Tree.

These Trees preserved in strong Boxes may be with ease removed into your Conservatory, and thence in the Summer plac'd in several places of your *Garden.*

No Tree your Gardens, *or your Fountains more*
Adorns, than what the Atlantic *Apples bore.*
Th' deathless Beauty Crowns its shining Leaves,
And to dark Groves its Flower lustre gives;
Besides the splendor of its golden fruit,
Of which the boughs are never destitute.

Rapinus.

They

They are raised of the Kernels sown in *March* in cases of rich Earth: Those Fruits were unknown in former Ages to the *Europeans*, and the Trees have not been long introduc'd; and not many years hath that more noble kind, the *China Orange* been propagated in *Portugal* and *Spain*, which annually furnish us with those pleasant Fruits, yet there in a few years have they degenerated, as to size and taste: It's probable the Kernels of those may prosper better with us than the *African*, *China* being not so hot.

The Fruit with us, although it ripeneth not so well as in *Spain*, yet in such years that our old stock of imported Fruit is decay'd; they serve for many Physical uses. But the Flowers here are much more valuable than the Fruit.

Therefore if a Wall be built near the House, and well defended behind, and on either side from cold Winds, and several Leaves or Doors of close Board made to shut before your Wall, and the top well secured from Rain; against this Wall may you plant your Orange-Trees, and prune them against it without ever removing them; only in the Spring season, you may open your Leaves or Doors by degrees, and at length open it quite before and on the top, only leaving the main stays until the next Winter. In the building of this Wall may you contrive Concavities, through which the heat of Fire made in several places for that purpose, may pass behind your Trees, or you may have other Fires in this Shed as in your Green-house.

The

The moſt proper Earth wherein to plant your Orange Trees, is that which is taken out of a Melon, or Cucumber-bed, and equally mix'd or temper'd with a fine loamy Earth, and ſo to remain the whole Winter, then ſifted into the Caſes.

Inſtead of the fat Earth of a Melon, or Cucumber-bed, you may uſe Neats-dung, and order it as the Melon Earth.

Before you put your Earth into your Caſes, lay on the bottom a good quantity of Oſier or Withy Sticks, or ſuch like, which will preſerve it light; if they are in a ſmall quantity mixed throughout, it will be the better.

Place them in your Conſervatory before any Froſts happen, and in hard Weather give them ſome warmth.

As the Spring appears, ſo acquaint them by degrees with the Air, opening the Doors at Noon firſt, and ſhutting them again, then for a whole Day, if the Weather permit. The like diſcretion you muſt uſe when you ſet them into your Conſervatory, not to ſhut them up too cloſe until extremity of Weather require it.

As the Trees grow large, ſo you may enlarge your Caſes, and take out the Trees, Earth and all, and place them in your new Caſes.

I have heard of a Gentleman that annually makes a Shed or Houſe over his Orange-Tree, and as the Tree encreaſeth, ſo he enlargeth his Houſe, and that his Tree is very large, and beareth plentifully.

You

You muſt gather the Flowers as they blow, leaving but few to knit into Fruit, elſe will your Tree ſpend it ſelf in Fruit.

You muſt take care to bruſh the Spiders Webs off this Tree very gently, for they delight to work on it; the fragrant Bloſſoms attracting many Flies.

The Kernels may be planted in hot Beds, and will bring fair Plants the ſooner.

Eaſie *Stoves* or *Heats* will ſerve until the Froſts be very hard; then muſt you kindle greater Fires, but let not any Fire come too near your Trees, nor any Smoak annoy them. But if your Conſervatory be made very cloſe with Mats, that Water will not freeze in it, then there needs not any Fire.

You muſt water them gently when you find they require it, which may be diſcerned by the Leaf which will ſoon complain, but give them rather too little than too much, and wet not the Leaves.

You ought to renew and alter the Earth as tenderly as you can, by abating the upper part of it, and ſtirring it up with a Fork, taking heed to the Roots, and applying the prepared Earth in the room of it, which may be done in *May* and *September*.

If you kindle ſome Charcoal, and when they have done ſmoaking, put them in a hole ſunk a little into the Floor, about the middle of it; it is the beſt Stove, and leaſt annoys your Plants.

The

The Water wherewith you irrigate your *Orange-Trees*, ought to be prepared as well as the Earth, you may therefore mix it with Sheeps-dung, or Neats-dung, and let it ſtand two or three days in the *Air* or *Sun*, and it will be very fit for your purpoſe.

Lemmons. *Lemmons* may be ordered after the ſame manner as the *Oranges*, but they are not capable of giving you ſo large a requital.

Amomum Plinii. *Amomum Plinii*, ſo called, being a Plant by him eſteemed, and by him reported to be naturally growing in divers parts of *Aſia*, and yielding a rich and coſtly Berry, uſed in Perfumes; is now nurſed up in our Climate, by careful preſerving it in the Winter in the cloſe Conſervatory, where it requires the ſame care as doth the *Orange-Tree*.

Geranium. *Geranium nocte olens*, which ſmelleth pleaſantly in the Night only, is a tender Plant, and deſerves a place in your Conſervatory.

The *Tuberoſe Hyacinth*, famous for its aſpiring Head and moſt fragrant Flowers, ſeeming to contend with the *Orange-Tree*, is a very tender Plant, impatient of Cold or Wet.

The Root muſt be taken up in *April*, carefully parted without breaking the greater Fibres, and then replanted, the bottom of the Pot filled with prepared Earth, but the Roots covered only with natural freſh Earth, and then the Pot filled with Earth prepared, as before; place this Pot in a hot Bed, and there let it ſtand without watering until the Root ſpring, then ſet the Pot under a South-

South-wall, in dry Weather water it easily. In *August* it will yield its rich Flowers, and in *September* it must be removed into the Conservatory.

In *September* you may take up the Bulbs of this Plant, and preserve them in dry Sand, or when the Roots are dry, lay them up in Papers in a warm Closet.

The *Blew Borage-leav'd Auricula*, being leaved like *Borage*, yieldeth fine blew Flowers; it is a rare and a tender Plant, and set in a Pot may be preserved in your Conservatory, from the extremity of the Winter. *Blew Borage leaved Auricula.*

Bears-Ears Sanicle, is almost of the form of an *Auricula*, is a Plant usually raised of Seed, planted in Pots, and preserved as other tender Plants. *Cortusa. Matthioli.*

Mastich Thyme is a Plant of a curious Scent, and vulgarly known, apt to be increased by Slips, and as apt to be destroyed by Cold, and is worthy of your care to preserve it. *Marum:*

Assyrian Mastich is of the same nature, but so absolute a bait for Cats, that they will come far and near to it, to devour it, unless you preserve it with the sharpest Thorns or Furze. These and Mastichs are best preserved by placing them within the Earth, and covering them. *Marum Syriacum.*

But the most rare and curious Exotic, is the Lilly of *Japan*, which is raised in some more Southerly Climate, and being brought into this Country, yields a fair Branch of Flowers much like red *Martagons*, and when the Sun shines

ſhines on it, the whole Flower reſembles *Cloath* of *Gold*; although the Root may live over the year, yet it's ſaid it never bears any more Flowers in this Climate.

Several others there are, that are not only tender, but rare and acceptable Plants to the ingenious and careful Floriſt, wherewith, according to the magnitude or capacity of his *Green*-Houſe, or meaſure of his Time he can ſpare about them; he may eaſily furniſh himſelf with all from the great Conſerver of theſe Rarities, Mr. *George Ricketts* of *Hogsden*.

LIB.

Lib. III.

Of Eſculents or Plants for Foods.

AS a *Garden* is the greateſt Ornament to your Seat without doors, for the variety of Pleaſures it yields, ſo is it of as great advantage and ſatisfaction for the variety it affords you of curious Aliments and Condiments at your Table; not any diſh of Meat can be compleatly ſerved up, without a ſhare of ſome *Hortulan* or other Vegetable.

The meaneſt Cottager may well afford that little ground (if he hath any) that is contiguous to his Tenement, for the propagating of ſome or other of theſe *Eſculents* we are now to treat of: It is not the Heat or Colours, Fatneſs or Barrenneſs of his Land can excuſe him here, for there is no Land but is apt to bring you ſome Fruit or other of your Labour, and wherein ſome of theſe Plants do delight: If it be a dry hot ſandy Land, *Carots* will proſper in it; if cold and dry, then *Turnips*, if hot and moiſt, then *Peaſe*, *Beans*, and moſt ſorts of Tillage; if cold and moiſt, then *Cabbages*,

Beans, &c. will not disdain it; thus may some sort of Tillage or other be adapted to every sort of Land.

The accidental or casual thriving of Plants or Seeds in the various sorts of Lands hath, within the memory of man, very much encouraged our Rusticks to a farther improvement of this part of Husbandry, not only because the products of their Labours have often found a good Market for curious Pallats, but because they have been frugal Meats for their own Families, and sometimes necessity also (which often makes men ingenious) hath put them upon the propagation of these Esculents, which have served as Meat, Bread and Drink, in such years that Corn hath been scarce. For in a great part of the World, the Inhabitants never were acquainted with the making of Bread of Corn, but sometimes of the Roots of some Plants that grew amongst them, which they eat with their hunted Venison, or with their Milk, as in *Ireland* they eat *Potatoes*; thus here in *England*, *Carrots*, *Turnips*, *Cabages*, and many other Roots and Plants have been both Bread and Meat, for the Husbandman and his Family, who have in many places subsisted long on this Food; and these Esculents being of themselves of a fine nutrimental and moist nature, have not required so much Drink as other Meats more dry and salt usually do: These kind of Diets are at a far less charge and trouble to the *Pater-familias*, than those of *Flesh*, *Bread*, *Cheese*, &c.

And

And if the Case were truly stated, and the Times compared, the improvement and propagation of these Esculents hath been one principal cause of the deadness of the Market for Corn, which probably may be objected against this design.

To answer which you may consider, that cheap Food is one of the greatest encouragements for the peopling of a Country, for this very reason many thousands have deserted *England*, to settle in *Ireland* and elsewhere, to our great dettiment, and their great advantage.

If any Farmer complain of the Effects of these Improvements, then let him make use of the same, and set out yearly a parcel of his Farm, for the raising of *Garden*-Tillage, wherewith to feed his own Family, and furnish the Market.

Then will it be objected, that in case every man should so improve a part of his Ville; the prices of the Tillage would be low, and it would not quit the Cost.

To answer which, It would then reduce the advantage of the one and the other part of Husbandry to a Ballance, from which no ill effect as to the general can proceed.

It may be further objected, that seeing less Land will, by these ways of improvement, feed a certain number of people, than the old way of Husbandry can do, that much Land will therefore lie waste.

In answer whereunto, If you can raise as much Food on an Acre of Land, as formerly

you did on four Acres, what disadvantage to you is it in case the three remaining Acres lie waste? but you may convert them to pasture, if you please.

In case you object, that *Garden*-Tillage requires more hands to *dig*, *trench*, *set*, *sow*, *plant*, *weed*, and *gather in*, than the former way of sowing of Corn.

Answer, This is one of the Advantages it will necessarily produce, that a Man and his Family may live and keep themselves daily employed in this method of Husbandry, on a few Acres of Land to as equal an advantage, as by the more ancient way they could on a great Farm: For it were much better for the publick, that the great Farms were subdivided into lesser, that the people might have Habitations and Employments here at home to keep them from straggling abroad, than to have so many great Farms lie so neglected, to the great prejudice of the Commonweal: *Palladius* was of the same opinion, who said, *Fecundior est culta Exiguitas, quam magnitudo neglecta.*

But if you will say, that by multiplying *Garden*-Tillage after this manner, it will make Corn-land so low rented, and Corn thereby to become cheap, to the great detriment to the Kingdom in general. Then consider, that if a part of our Land will yield us Food sufficient, and uphold the yearly value of our Villes, as by this Method it will certainly do, then may there be Corn enough raised in

England,

England, not only to ballance, but under-ſell our forreign Neighbours, to our great advantage, and their detriment (which is almoſt equal to it;) for the more of our own Growths we can vend, the more is Navigation encouraged, and the greater Returns are made. It is when the Growths or Manufactures of other Countries are imported hither, and in lieu of them ready Money returned, that impoveriſhes us, and enriches them. Therefore when the contrary is done, it muſt have a contrary effect.

The private Advantages of the propagating *Hortulans* or Eſculent Plants, as they are oftentimes repreſented, are prodigious and incredible, therefore a modeſt computation is the beſt encouragement; for any rational man will more eaſily believe that an Acre of *Turnips*, *Carrots*, *Onions*, or the like, is four or five times more profitable to the Husbandman, than an Acre of Wheat or Barley, or ſuch like, than if it ſhould be ſaid to be ten or twenty times more profitable.

But for your *Garden* (where you are confined to a leſs Room than a Farm) which is divided into ſeveral ſquares or quarters, and each ſquare or quarter well manured and prepared for its proper Tillage, there may you expect a far greater encreaſe, eſpecially of ſuch Plants that annually produce their Fruit without the renewing of the Gardeners Coſt and Pains, unleſs only to cheriſh and preſerve them, with the planting and propagating of which ſort of Eſculents we will begin. L 3 CHAP.

CHAP. I.

Of such Plants that are Perennial, or continue over the Year.

Of Asparagus.

THE best and most select of such Esculent Plants that continue from Year to Year, without new planting or sowing, is the *Asparagus*, which deserves to be first named, because of its early and plentiful encrease it yields, the delicacy of its Meat, and the continuance of it before any other, gains a repute above it.

So long since as in *Pliny*'s time it was the most esteem'd of any in the *Garden*, although in those parts they sometimes grew wild, yet in the *Gardens* were they so cultivated, that three of their Buds or Heads would weigh a Pound, and were (though common) the *Romans* dainty Dish: And *Cato* many years before *Pliny* wrote very much concerning their propagation, out of the abundant regard he had for them, being then but newly reduced to the Gardener's care.

They grow naturally wild, or at least some Bastard kind of them in the Meadows near *Bristol*; but our more fair and large, usually called *Dutch Asparagus*, are propagated from Seed;

Seed; the Ground wherein you ſowe them muſt be rich and well tempered and prepared, then may you with your Finger prick in the Berries at what diſtance you pleaſe: the beſt time is in *January* or *February*.

Then after two years, in *March* following, will they be fit to remove into the Bed wherein they are to remain.

But the beſt and moſt expeditious way is, to buy your Plants of two or three years growth of the *Gardeners*, who raiſe them on purpoſe for Sale at an eaſie price.

The Bed you plant them in ought to be three or four foot wide, and about two foot in depth, the moſt part within the ſurface of the earth, and about ſix inches above, for it will ſettle. When you have made, clean and ſquare your Foſs, you may fill it with good rotten dung of any ſort, with a little mixture of earth, the beſt Soyl is that which the Butchers make, wherein there are Hoofs, Rams-horns, or any ſuch cornuous ſubſtance, wherein they exceedingly delight; it's probable woollen rags or old leather may do as well; with theſe mixtures may you fill your Bed about eighteen inches, then cover the ſame with good old rich Mould, that came out of ſome *Cucumber* or *Melon* Bed for about ſix inches more, in the midſt whereof plant your Sets, at ſixteen or eighteen inches diſtance in a *Quincunical* order, that they may lie covered two or three inches; plant them with their Roots ſpreading as much as you can. Or you may

cover the Dung with rich Mould, three inches, and then place your Sets with the Roots ſpreading, and then gently cover them with the like Mould three inches.

You may make as many of theſe Beds, and as long as you pleaſe, leaving a two foot interval between them, for the conveniency of dreſſing and cutting them, for broad Beds are inconvenient, no Tillage ſuffering more by treading than theſe.

About three years after they are planted may you cut of them: the ſooner you cut of them, the more will the head of the Root knit, and the more in number will it yearly yield you, and the later you cut, the more will the Root and head grow in bigneſs, and the fairer Buds will you have. Some will thus grow to be very large.

When *Green Peaſe* furniſh your Table, then may you let your *Aſparagus* run to Seed, that they may gather ſtrength for the ſucceeding year.

In the cutting the Buds remove ſome of the Earth with your Knife, to avoid injuring the next Succeſſor.

In *November*, or the beginning of *December*, cut the ſeedy ſtalks cloſe to the ground, and cover the Beds with new warm Horſe-dung, which will prevent them from extream Froſts, for no other will injure them.

In the beginning of *March* uncover them if the Weather be open, and either before you cover them, or at this time, weed them clean, and

and after weeding lay on your Bed the bottom of a *Melon* or *Cucumber* Bed, or ſuch like rich Earth, about two fingers thick, to ſupply the uſual decay they are ſubject unto.

You may have early *Aſparagus*, if you take the old Roots with the Earth about them, and place them on a hot Bed, thus will they bud in *January*.

By the precedent Rules will a *Garden* of *Aſparagus* furniſh you with Buds near three months of the year, without the force of a hot Bed, and that in ſuch plenty, that no other Tillage whatever, that is perennial (the *Artichoak* only excepted) affords the like. Theſe whilſt leſs common, were received as Dainties at the beſt furniſh'd Tables; and now, though plentiful, are they an uſual Diſh at moſt Gentlemens Tables, and by degrees may come to be a more vulgar Diet; for after their firſt planting, the labour about them is but ſmall, and the coſt leſs, the trouble of cutting them not ſo great as gathering of Peaſe, nor dreſſing them ſo tedious, yet a Meat equalling the beſt of Tillage, and the moſt ſalubrious of any.

Of Artichoaks.

About the time the *Aſparagus* leaves you, the *Articboak* comes in requeſt, being one of the beſt of a *Gardens* products, and anciently derived from *Thiſtles*, as *Pilny* tells us, and in his time, and long before, had been ſo improved, that they became a moſt delicate Meat, and were ſerved up to the Tables of the moſt prodigal *Romans*. If then they were ſo excellent, ſurely by a continued improvement to this

this day, must they needs now be much better.

There are several kinds of them, as the more ordinary which run up tall, and bear small heads which are very hardy, and are usually called the *Thistle-Artichoaks*; the other sorts are more large, and grow low, and much to be preferred, but are more tender and unable to endure the severity of the Winter.

The best and largest sort is that called the *Globe-Artichoak*, bearing a very large Fruit of near twelve inches over. The meanest is that called the *Red-Artichoak*, with the Plants whereof many have been deceived, expecting a more excellent than ordinary Fruit, when instead thereof they produced the worst of *Artichoaks*.

They are increased by Slips, taken from the sides of the old Roots at the time of dressing them in the Spring, with as much root to them as you can.

Artichoaks delight in a rich and deep Soyl, and not very dry, which Soyl must be trenched about two foot deep, and mixed very well with good old rotten Dung, and so laid up into Beds of what form you think best, for you may go between them as you please; the *Artichoak* roots very deep, and if it likes its ground will grow very large, and continue many years.

You may plant them four foot apart at least, that they may have room to spread their leaves, and at their first planting be sure to water them in

in dry Weather until you observe them to grow.

The best times for the planting them is in the beginning of *April*, and you may sow any Sallet-Herbs between them, that may be gathered and disposed of before the *Artichoaks* spread too far. These Plants will some of them yield heads in the *Autumn* following.

If you throughly water your *Artichoaks* with Water enriched with Sheeps-dung, it will make them very large: Watring of them in dry Land, or in dry Years, much advantageth them, for in moist Years they are much more plentiful and large than in dry Years, and the better it will be in case the Water be fat.

Water drawn from Ashes, or improved by any fixed Salt, is very good for the same purpose; for I have known that *Artichoaks* have been the larger for Turf-ashes, casually with Dung laid at their Roots to preserve them in Winter.

In *November*, or the beginning of *December*, it will be a good time to secure your *Artichoaks* from the Frost, by raising the Earth about them, and encompassing them with long Dung, or any hawmy substance, but not to cover them, lest it perish them, for it's the Frost that perisheth the Roots, and the wet and want of Air that perish the Leaves.

About *London* where they have great *Gardens* of *Artichoaks*, they cannot so well cover them with long Dung; but instead thereof they cut off all the Greens which they sell for feeding

feeding of Cows, after the rate of 20 *s.* per Acre, as they themſelves tell me, and then cover the Plants over with Earth, to defend them from Froſts; ſo that it is not neceſſary to preſerve the Greens over the Winter.

But this way of covering them with Earth did not preſerve them in the great Froſt of 1683, when all ſo covered were killed; and at the ſame time thoſe that were covered well with long Dung were preſerved, in the ſmaller *Gardens* remote from *London*: and ſome that were buried in Dung all that Winter, being caſt out of the *Gardens*, were found in the Spring to be living.

Some preſcribe to whelm over them an earthen Pot, Bee-hive, or ſuch like, open at the top to give them Air, which may ſerve if the Winter be not too ſharp.

About the middle of *March*, you may gently move the Dung from them, and at the end, the Earth that was caſt up, and the firſt week in *April* may you dreſs them, by digging deeply about each Root, and ſlipping of every Set as low as poſſibly you can, leaving two or three of the greateſt and moſt diſtant the one from the other for Bearers, then fill them up round with good old Dung or rich Soil mixt with the Earth, and they will afford you fair Heads.

If you would have latter *Artichoaks*, you muſt cut the firſt Crops betimes, or expect them from your new ſet Plants.

A ſmall ſpot of ground thus planted and ordered, will furniſh your Table with many of theſe

these Fruits in a year, and are equal to the best of Vegetables for Food; charge and trouble are very little in comparison of the advantage.

They will continue six, eight, or ten years, sometimes twenty years and more, according to the goodness of the Land they grow in, and then must be renewed when you perceive them to degenerate; which they surely do if they like not their ground.

The young Buds of *Artichoaks* may be eaten raw with Pepper and Salt, as usually *Melons*, *Figs*, &c. are eaten.

The *Chard* of the *Artichoaks*, which is the Stalk of a young *Artichoak*, arising out of an old root, and preserved from the air, and from heading, by winding of it about with Straw, to blanch it and make it tender, is by the *French* esteem'd an excellent Dish.

The Roots, Stalks, and Leaves of them, whilst young and tender, are delicate Meat, especially if so preserved and blanched as is by some affirmed; and it is not improbable, for I have often found that by covering a Winter Bud to preserve it from Frost, the Snails have greedily devour'd it.

Those esculent Herbs that are perennial, because they are not so much used for Food as for Condiment, I shall discourse of in another Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of Esculent Roots.

Of Turnips. THere are several Roots that have afforded us great plenty of substantial, pleasant and wholesome Food, whereof the *Turnip* is esteem'd the best; there are several sorts of them, the round, long, and yellow, of which the round is the most common, though the others are very good; the long are usually called *Navews*; they have been an ancient Food throughout *Europe* Southward, and have been very much improved in *England* of late years.

They will grow on the meanest Land in its first tilth, and much the more if the Season prove moist or dropping. The Season of sowing them is about *Midsummer*, that they may be ready to improve upon the *Autumnal* Rain, which maketh them much sweeter than the *Vernal*.

They are tickle at their first coming up in a too dry season, and if (being sown early) they happen to fail, you may at the end of *July*, or beginning of *August* new sow your ground.

These Seeds are much sought for and devoured by small Birds, who will smell them in the

the ground, and when they first send their pale heads above the earth, the Birds will draw them out and eat of their Seeds, and leave the naked Shoots on the ground. Those that escape the Birds in small *Gardens* or Places, amongst, or near to Trees and Groves, as well as in the larger Fields, the Flies in dry and hot Summers usually devour; so that few or none escape them: which to prevent, some have affirmed, that if you take Soot of Chimnies, and lay it in Water, till the Water be strongly tinged therewith, and with that imbibe your Seed, and then sow it, neither the Birds nor Flies will meddle with it.

You may sow them in *April*, to have Turnips in the Summer, but sowing them after for the Winter is most seasonable.

In the Winter before the great Frosts prevail, you may take them up, and cutting off the Greens, dispose of them in some cool place on heaps, and they will keep long, and much better and longer in case they be laid in Sand and covered with it.

They will root the better and larger if the Leaves spread and grow flat, than if they stand upright or grow upwards; which to prevent, sowe them not too thick, or if they come up too thick in any place, reduce them to a convenient number or distance of about ten or twelve inches, and supply the defects by transplantation, and you will find that the increase of your Root shall ballance the lessening your number, for the near standing of any Vegeta-

bles

bles cauſe them to aſpire upwards, as is evident in moſt Trees planted in Copſes; which otherwiſe are apt to ſpread.

But if the over fatneſs of your Ground, which is a great fault for *Turnips*, or overmuch wet, cauſe them to run out in leaf more than in root, then treading down the leafs will make them root the better.

The Greens or Leaves of *Turnips* that have been ſown late, and lived over the Winter, are uſually boyled and eaten with ſalt Meats, and prove an excellent Condiment.

Thus ordered, will a ſmall ſpot of Ground yield you a ſecond Crop (after *Peaſe*, *Beans*, or *Sallet-Herbs*) of excellent Food, which the moſt curious Palates diſdain not, and much more in value than any of Corn or Grain whatever.

Of Carrots. *Carrots* have been anciently uſed for Meat, but not ſo much as *Turnips* have been, yet are they the ſweeter Meat, and more eaſily eaten without Bread, or rather better ſerve to ſupply that defect than *Turnips*, for *Turnips* are much the better Condiment, but *Carrots* the pleaſanter Food.

There are two ſorts of them, the yellow, and the Orange, or more red: the laſt of which is by much the better.

They delight in light Ground with a mixture of Sand; if it be rich or heavy, you muſt take the more pains in digging it, to make it as light as you can.

If you dung your Land the ſame year you

ſowe

ſowe your *Carrots*, you muſt be ſure to bury your Dung ſo low that the roots may not extend to it; for as ſoon as they touch the Dung they grow forked.

The Seaſon for ſowing them is in *February* or *March*, in dry Weather.

To make them large, you muſt do with them as with the *Turnips*, only they will admit of a greater number on the ſame quantity of ground than the other.

If ſown between *Beans* ſet in wide rows, after the *Beans* are taken up your *Carrots* will thrive, and you may have a ſecond Crop, but theſe not ſo fair nor early as thoſe that are ſown in Beds by themſelves.

To improve this and other Roots, gather your Seeds from the higheſt aſpiring Branches, and ſowe them as before is directed; then when you take them up, ſelect the faireſt, and preſerve for Seed the next year, then plant them, and take the Seeds from the higheſt tops as before.

Carrots are preſerved as *Turnips*, over the Winter; but if you will have *Carrots* early in the Spring, you muſt ſow them in *Auguſt*, and preſerve them from the Froſt in the Winter by covering them with Peaſe-haum: But theſe are not ſo good as thoſe that are ſown in the Spring.

Next unto *Carrots* are *Parſnips* in great uſe for a delicate ſweet Food, and were ſo eſteem'd in *Pliny*'s time, and by him reputed to be excitatives unto *Venus*; an Argument that they are very nutrimental. *Parſnips.*

They delight in a richer Soyl than the *Carrots*, but as light and well ſtirr'd as may be, elſe in every reſpect to be ordered as the *Carrots*, but are not to ſtand ſo thick.

Of Skirrets. The *Skirret* or *Skirwort*-root, was alſo a very ancient Diſh amongſt the *Romans*, and is the ſweeteſt, whiteſt, and moſt pleaſant of Roots, and by Phyſitians eſteemed a great reſtorative, and good for weak Stomachs, and an effectual Friend to Dame *Venus*.

Skirrets delight in a very rich, light, and not too dry Soyl, for in moiſt Summers they are faireſt.

They are increaſed by Plants divided in *February* or *March*, and ſet in ſingle Buds at ſix or eight inches diſtance, and in a dripping year, or otherwiſe, if they be watred in dry Seaſons, you will have a very plentiful increaſe the ſucceeding Winter; you may alſo plant them here and there on the edges of your other Beds.

They endure the Winter very well, and you may take them up at any time before the Spring be too forward, if the Froſts prevent you not; when you take the Roots, cover the tops in Earth for your farther encreaſe.

Of Scorſonera. The Root *Scorſonera* is as yet not common, but very much commended by ſome to be good Meat, after the outer Rind is ſcraped off, and the Root ſteep'd a-while in Water, to take away that little bitterneſs it hath.

They

They are said to lie in the ground all the Winter, and from year to year without any prejudice, but will still grow bigger and bigger, although they yearly run up to Seed.

They are increased either by Seed, or by Slips, as the *Skirrets*, or by cutting the Roots in several pieces, which planted in good ground at about eight or nine inches distance, in *March*, will yield a considerable increase, or may be planted at any other time, they being hardy.

They are esteem'd to be very cordial and excellent in Feavers.

Potato's are much used in *Ireland* and in *America* as Bread, and are of themselves also an usual Food. *Of Potatos.*

They grow in any good mellow ground, and are increased by cutting the Roots in pieces, and planting them as the *Scorsonera*.

These and the *Jerusalem Artichoaks*, which are by much the meaner Food, although somewhat like them, may be propagated with advantage to poor People, a little ground yielding a very great quantity, as the many small *Welsh* Territories adjoyning to the High-ways in those parts, planted with them, plainly demonstrate. *Of Jerusalem Artichoaks.*

The *Red Beet* or *Roman Parsnip*, and the *White Beet* were amongst the ancient *Romans*, and by several are now used as well in Root as in Leaf at the Table. *Of Beet.*

Beets delight in a rich and deep Soil as doth the *Parsnip*, and must be sown about the same

time, or rather ſet at about fifteen inches aſunder, becauſe their Leaves are large.

Or you may ſowe them in a Bed promiſcuouſly, and when they are grown a little then tranſplant them, and they will yield fairer Roots; the other being apt to be forked.

There are *Chards* of *Beets* as well as of *Artichoaks*, and after the ſame manner may be prepared.

You muſt take them up before the Froſt prevent you, and houſe them as before was directed for *Turnips* and *Carrots*.

After the ſame manner plant the beſt for Seed as was directed for *Turnips* and *Carrots*.

Of Radiſhes.

Radiſhes in the more Southern Countries are a delicate Meat, eſpecially if ſown in brackiſh Lands, or watred with brackiſh Waters, and therefore were they in ſuch eſteem with the *Egyptians*, where were the daintieſt and ſweeteſt *Radiſhes* in the World.

The *Greeks* alſo ſo highly preferr'd them to all other Meats, in regard of their good nourihment, that in an Oblation of *Garden*-fruits unto *Apollo*, in his Temple at *Delphos*, they dedicated the *Beet* in Silver, the *Turnip* in Lead, but the *Radiſh* in beaten Gold: Alſo *Moſchion* the *Greek* Writer had ſo great an eſteem for the *Radiſh*, that he compiled a whole Book of it, as *Pliny* relates.

Theſe in our more Northern Clime attain not to that degree of maturity, as to become Food, except it be the Leaves, which boyled are eaten with ſalt Meats.

But

But are very much regarded as a *Sallade* for their biting and quick taſte, eſpecially in the Spring, eaten with Salt.

There are three ſorts of *Radiſhes*, the ſmall eating *Radiſh*, the *Horſe Radiſh*, and the black *Radiſh*.

The firſt is that which hath been ſo much in repute, and is now ordinarily eaten, and is raiſed of Seed.

To have them early they muſt be raiſed on a hot Bed, with a ſufficient thickneſs of good rich light Mold, that they may have depth enough to root in before they reach the Dung.

To have large and clean *Radiſhes*, make holes as deep as your finger about three inches diſtant, into each hole drop a ſound Seed (or two if ſuſpitious) and cover the Seeds a little, leaving the reſt of the hole open; thus will they grow to the height of the hole ere they dilate their Leaves, and yield you a long and tranſparent Root.

You may ſowe them all the year, thoſe in the Winter in hot Beds, thoſe ſown after *Midſummer* will not run to Seed that year.

They delight in rich and light ground, and require watring, for in dripping yeers they prove faireſt.

The *Horſe Radiſh* is increaſed by Plants, as well as from Seeds, and uſed by many as an excellent and wholeſome Sance. *Horſe Radiſhes.*

The black *Radiſh* is ſo mean a Root that it finds no place in a good *Garden*. *Black Radiſh.*

Of Onions.

Onions are an ancient Food, especially of the *Egyptians*, and are much esteem'd of by the *Spaniards*, who eat them as *Englishmen* do Apples, for in the hotter Countries they are a little milder than here.

There are several sorts of them, the *Strasburgh* Onion, red *Spanish*, white *Spanish*, and the *English*; the red the most tart, and the white the mildest; the ordinary *English* are not so fair as those of *Biscay* or St. *Omers*, but these by often sowing degenerate.

Sowe *Onions* in *February*, or beginning of *March*, between the full of the Moon, and the last Quarter, and they will head very well, and not run to *Cibols*.

They delight in good Land well tempered and freed from Weeds, they extend not their Fibres far downwards, therefore in your sowing them tread your Bed or beat it flat, then sowe it with your Seed as equally dispersed as you can, and not too thick, then sift over it fine rich Earth, a finger thick at most; by this means the root will grow larger, and not be apt to run into the ground, for an *Onion* and a *Turnip*, the more on the surface they grow, the fairer they prove: This I had from an experienced person.

Onions sown with Salt are said to prosper and grow large; it is not improbable, becaus they seem to extract much of the brackish moisture of the Earth.

You may sow *Onions* all the year for the use of the young *Onions* or *Scallions*; those sown in

in *Autumn* may be covered with Straw or Peaſe-haum, and ſo preſerv'd all the Winter, and will be early *Chibols* or *Scallions* in the Spring.

You may plant ſmall *Onions*, or ſuch that are grown or beginning to ſhoot in the Spring, in deep holes, and they will prove good *Chibols*.

There is a diſtinct ſpecies of *Chibols* or *Aſcalonian Onions* in *France*, that are increaſed by Off-ſets, as the *Eſchalots*, but they are not uſual with us.

The uſe of *Onions* is generally known, and the advantage they bring to the careful *Gardener* very great.

The uſe of *Garlick* is as ancient as that of *Onions* with the *Egyptians*, who had them both in very great eſteem, as now our *Welſh* have *Leeks*, and uſed to ſwear by *Garlick* and *Onions*, deeming them Sacred, becauſe they afforded them ſo much rare Food: much after the ſame manner do our ancient *Britains* dedicate the *Leek* to their Saint *David* on his day, and *Egyptian*-like, ſome of them are known by their Magazine of *Garlick-fume*, at a great diſtance. *Of Garlick*

Garlick is planted by Off-ſets in *February* or *March* in good rich Soyl, and it will increaſe wonderfully. About the end of *June* you muſt tie the Leaves in knots, which will make them head, and prevent their ſpindling: it may be taken up in *Auguſt* when the Blade withereth.

Much of it is eaten in *Wales* and *Scotland*, and ſome part of *England*, and much more of it would be ſpent for its wholſomeneſs, were it not for the offenſive ſmell it gives to the by-Standers, which is taken away by eating of a *Beet-root* roſted in the Embers, as *Menander* (a *Greek* Writer quoted by *Pliny*) ſaith.

Of Eſchalots.

Eſchalots are now from *France* become an *Engliſh* Condiment, and are increaſed and managed near after the ſame manner as the *Garlick*, only they are to be ſet earlier becauſe they ſpring ſooner, and taken up as ſoon as the leaves begin to wither, which is before the *Garlick*. They muſt not lie in the ground long after, for either they rot in the ground or the Winter kills them.

They give a fine reliſh to moſt Sawces, and the breath of thoſe that feed on them is not offenſive to others, as it is of thoſe that feed on *Garlick* or *Onions*: they are apt to degenerate, being planted two or three Years in the ſame ground, therefore it is beſt to renew your Plantation with new Plants lately brought from *France*, within two or three Years.

Of Leeks.

Leeks were in uſe as anciently as *Onions* or *Garlick*, not only in forreign Parts, but here in *Britain*, as is evident by the conſtant uſe of them by the *Welſh*, who propagate an abundance of them, inſomuch, that I have ſeen the greateſt part of a *Garden* there ſtored with *Leeks*, and part of the remainder with *Onions* and *Garlick*.

By

By reaſon of their mild nature they are much uſed in *Porrage*, which hath derived its Name from *Porrum* a *Leek*, though now from the *French*, we call it *Pottage*.

They are raiſed of Seeds, as the *Onions*, and ſown about the ſame time.

About *Auguſt*, plant your *Leeks* in very fat rich Ground, and make the holes deep with a ſetting Stick, wherein plant them, but fill not the hole with Earth; water them once in two days with water enriched with fat Dung, and they will be very large and white.

Plant the beſt for Seed, as you do the *Onions*; and the ſeed-bearing ſtalks of both muſt be ſupported by Sticks and Threads, elſe they will lean to the Ground.

Sives being a diminutive kind of *Leek*, is next to be mentioned; they are increaſed by parting them, and planting them in ſingle Heads early in the Spring, if planted in good Land, they will multiply exceedingly, they ſtand many Years, and are a pleaſant Sawce and good Pot-herb. *Of Sives.*

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of Beans and Peaſe.

GArden *Beans* are an ancient food, eſteem'd by *Pliny* the principal of all Pulſe, they are a very ſtrong and nouriſhing Meat. *Pythagoras* forbid his Scholars the eating of *Beans*, only (as is ſuppoſed) becauſe they were a rough Meat, and diſturbed their ſedate minds in the night, and are not therefore ſo good for Philoſophers nor Students. The greater ſort which we vulgarly call *Sanwich Beans*, are by much to be preferr'd for their fruitfulneſs and goodneſs.

They may be ſet in *November*, and at any time after till *May*, but moſt ſecurely in *February* or *March*, for if they begin to ſpire, and very ſevere Froſts happen after it, they may be all deſtroyed. *Probatum eſt.*

It is not good to ſet them promiſcuouſly, but in double ranges, at three foot diſtance at leaſt, the Ranges running from North to South, the Sun will comfort and ripen them the better.

If

If you cut off the Stalks of your Beans near the ground, when they are first ripe, the Roots will spring again, and in seasonable Years you may have a second Crop about *Michaelmas*.

From whence we may conclude, that if you cut off your Beans that are set in the Spring, at such times as they begin to blow, then they will germinate again into more Branches and bear late, much better than if they were planted late, which extream drouth usually hinders from coming to perfection.

There is a small sort of Bean called a *Spanish* Bean that ripens early, and therefore to be preferr'd.

Of Kidny Beans.

Kidney Beans were as ancient a Food as the other, and in very great esteem with the old *Italians*; yet within the Memory of Man were a great rarity here in *England*, although now a known and common delicate Food.

They delight in a warm, light, and fertile ground, which being well dirr'd, and about *May*-day, or very little sooner, planted with the *Kidney-Beans*, at about a foot apart, and two fingers deep, will yield you an extraordinary Crop.

You may either set tall Sticks near for them to twine about, or let them lie on the ground, but if you are straitned in room, those on Sticks will yield you the greatest encrease.

Of these there are 4 sorts, 1. The *Scarlet Bean*, which yieldeth a rough husk, and is not the best to eat in the shell as *Kidney Beans* usually

ſually are eaten, but is reputed the beſt to be eaten in the Winter when dry and boyled. 2. The *Painted* or *Streaked Bean*, which is the hardieſt although the meaneſt of all, and is known, the dry Bean being all over ſtreaked with a dark Colour. 3. The large *White Bean*, which yields a fair and delicate Pod. 4. The ſmall *White Bean*, which except in ſize is like the latter, but eſteem'd the ſweeter.

Bona Viſta's. There is another ſort much like the laſt, that is natural to the Iſland *Bona Viſta*, and thence taken and propagated in the *Summer* Iſlands, from whence ſome certain perſons have them dry, and eſteem them as delicate Meat; they will flouriſh well here in Branch, but our Summers are not long enough to bring them to maturity, *Quære*, if raiſed on a hot Bed.

Of Peaſe. *Peaſe* are of divers kinds, and ſome of them the ſweeteſt and moſt pleaſant of all Pulſes; the meaner ſort of them have been long acquainted with our *Engliſh* Air and Soil; but the ſweet and delicate ſorts of them have been introduced into our *Gardens* only in this latter Age.

There are divers ſorts of Peaſe now propagated in *England*, as three ſeveral ſorts of *Hot-ſpurs*, the long, the ſhort, and *Barns's Hot-ſpur. Sandwich*, five ſorts of *Rouncivals*, the Grey, White, Blew, Green, and Maple *Rouncival.* Three ſorts of *Sugar Peaſe*, the large White, ſmall White, and Grey *Sugar Peaſe.* The *Egg-Peaſe*, *Wing Peaſe*, and *Sickle Peaſe*; whereof the *Hot-ſpurs* are the moſt early, pleaſant, and profitable

profitable of all others. The *Sugar Peaſe* with crooked Cods, the ſweeteſt of all. The large white and green *Rouncival*, and the great *Egg-Peaſe* we ſhall more particularly adviſe to be propagated in our *Gardens*.

The *Hot-ſpurs* are the ſpeedieſt of growth of any, that being ſown about the middle of *May* will in ſix Weeks time return ripe again into your hands, no Vegetable beſides being ſo quick in its growth and maturity; therefore let theſe be the firſt that you ſow, if ſown in *February* or *March*, they will come earlier than any other ſort ſown before Winter; but if you ſow them in *September*, and can by Fences of Reed, or otherwiſe, defend them from extream Froſts, you may have ripe Peaſcods in *May* following.

The large *Sugar Peaſe* (which many take to be a fair white ſweet *Peaſe* ſucceeding the *Hot-ſpur*, but erroniouſly) is a tender *Peaſe* planted in *April*, and ripe after *Midſummer*, the Cods are very crooked and ill-ſhaped, which being boyl'd with the unripe *Peaſe*, in them, are extraordinary ſweet. The greateſt diſcouragement in raiſing theſe, is that their ſweetneſs attracts the ſmall Birds unto them, to their total deſtruction, unleſs carefully prevented; which is a ſufficient Argument of their pre-excellency.

The large white and green *Rouncivals*, or *Haſtings*, are tender, and not to be ſet till the cold is over, and then not very thick, for they ſpread much, and mount high, and therefore require

require the aid of tall sticks, every one knows the worth of them.

There is another very large grey, but extraordinary sweet *Pease*, that is lately propagated, it is tender but very fruitful, and deserves a large Bed in your Kitchin *Garden*.

They delight in a warm light Soyl, if it be rich the *Pease* are the fairer, if lean the *Pease* are the more early, and spend better, especially when dry.

They are set with a Dibble to more advantage than sown in Rills or Furrows, but either way should be by a Line, and the rows eighteen inches or two foot apart, as the ground is in goodness, that you may go between them to haw, weed, or gather them.

If you keep the ground between them bare, they will ripen the sooner, for the heat of the ground will contribute much thereto.

If you raise the Earth about them when they are about a hand breadth high, they will flourish the better.

If you set or sow them in the beginning of or before Winter, you must inter twice as many *Pease* as you need to do in case you stay till *February* or *March*, because the Cold and and Mice will destroy a part.

Ground laid in deep Furrows from *East* to *West*, and *Pease* sown or set on the *South* declining side of each Furrow, will defend your *Pease* better in the Winter, than if they were sown or set on a Level. For on the *Wiltshire* Plains, the Husbandmen leave their Land af-

ter

ter it is ſown with Wheat, as rough and clotty as they can, to ſhelter their Corn in Graſs from the ſeverity of the cold Winds in the Winter.

Peaſe on Sticks will bear more, but on the ground will ripen ſooner.

CHAP. IV.

Of Cabbages and Caulyflowers.

Cabbages.

THere is not a more ancient nor common Eſculent Plant than a *Cabbage* or *Caulwort*, nor any *Garden* Aliment ſo wholeſome, if *Cato* that lived near two thouſand years ſince, and *Chryſippus* and *Dieuches*, two famous Phyſitians more ancient, (that wrote each of them a Volume of the excellent Vertues of this Plant) may be credited, or the Countrey wherein they wrote conſidered. *Pythagoras* himſelf, long before *Cato*, had not ſo mean an opinion of *Beans*, but he had as high of this. Ever ſince thoſe Times we have had the conſent and approbation of all our *European* Territories (except the more ſevere *Northern*), that *Cabbages* and *Caulworts* are a good and wholeſome Food, as their conſtant and vulgar uſe of them in every place ſufficiently manifeſt. Here in *England* not a Village without

out them; and if there be a House without a *Garden*, or a *Garden* without a *Caulwort*, yet the Inhabitants or Owners of them will furnish themselves from the Market: yet are they not so addicted to the use of them here as in *France*, *Holland*, *Germany*, &c. where (in *Germany*) that famous City of *Wurtsburgh* is said to derive its Name from the great plenty of *Wurts*, as they call them, that grow about it.

We have here many sorts of them besides the common which are known to every one, as the *Dutch Cabbage*, the large sided *Cabbage*, the white-headed *Cabbage*, the red *Cabbage*, perfum'd *Cabbage*, *Savoy Cabbage*, and *Russia Cabbage*.

The Dutch Cabbage. The first that heads is a small white *Cabbage*, called the *Dutch-Cabbage*, and comes in Season before the common *English Cabbage*, and and is very sweet, notwithstanding it hath not felt the Frost, which is a great improver of the taste of most *Cabbage*.

The large-sided Cabbage. The *Cabbage* that is now much in request is the *large-sided Cabbage*, it's a very tender Plant, sown not till *May*, planted out in *July*, and in the *Autumn* is eaten as the best *Cabbage* in the World.

The white-headed Cabbage. The large *white-headed Cabbage*, which is the biggest of all *Cabbages*, is worthy your care for its greatness sake.

The red Cabbage. There is a sort of red *Cabbage*, and another inclining to purple; they are small and grow near the ground, and are planted only for variety sake, and to garnish Dishes, *&c.*

There

There are some sort that have a Musky Scent, and are therefore called perfum'd *Cabbages*, which are not unworthy your Care. *Perfum'd Cabbage.*

But one of the best sorts of all is the *Savoy Cabbage*, almost as hardy as our common *English Cabbage*; the Winter Plants head very well, being planted out in the Spring, as the ordinary *Cabbages* are, the heads when the Frosts have touched them turn yellow, and then are delicate Meat. *The Savoy Cabbage.*

These that are raised of Seed, in the Spring will have but small heads, which, as also those without heads in the succeeding Winter, are exceeding any ordinary *Caul* or *Cabbage*.

The *Russia Cabbage* is the least and most humble of all the *Cabbages*, growing very near the ground; is very pleasant Food, hardy and quick of growth: So that you need not be without all the Summer. The Winter Plants heading early, and the Spring Plants arriving to maturity in seven weeks after they are sown. *The Russia Cabbage.*

Sow all your *Cabbage* Seeds that you intend for Winter Plants in *August*, or beginning of *September*, and when they are grown with Leaves about three Fingers broad, then draw them and plant them out in fresh and rich Land, where they may remain all the Winter, and at Spring replant them where they are to stand for *Cabbages*. These are those they call Leger Plants that produce the fairest *Cabbages*.

You may sow your Seeds in the Spring, in *March* and *April*, for *Cauls* for the whole Summer; and some of them, if the Year prove

dripping, or they ſometimes watred will head.

At the tranſplanting your young Plants, water them with water that is enriched with dung.

Before the great Froſts ſurpriſe you, you may take up your hardeſt *Cabbages*, and after they have hung up by their Roots about a fortnight, to drain the water from them, you may either lay them in ſome Cellar, where they will keep a long time, or plant them deep in the ground cloſe one to another, and cover them with Hawm or Straw until you have occaſion to uſe them.

Thoſe you intend for Seed, you may plant in rich Soil indifferent deep, and cover them from the Froſts, and in the Spring they will quickly aſpire.

Beſides theſe variety of *Cabbages*, *Caul*, and *Sprouts* ſpringing from the old decapitated Stumps, there is a perennial *Caul*, being uſually called *Sheer-Wort* or *Sheer-Caul* that will continually yield you a green Meſs whenever you have occaſion, and deſerves a place in your Kitchin *Garden*, and is raiſed of Seed as the other.

There is alſo a ſort of *Caul* that is very much curled, and is very good, and by ſome much eſteem'd.

But the *German* Colewort exceeds all other for its delicate Taſt, and its hardineſs againſt the greateſt ſeverity of the Winter, although not yet commonly propagated.

Of Caulyflowers. There is a Species of *Cauls* much more excellent

cellent than any of the former which are *Cauliflowers*, which merit a far greater eſteem at the Table than the *Cabbage*, for a time, their prime Seaſon laſts not above two Months. But afterwards the *Cabbage* becomes a better Diſh, which is welcome to any Man's Table ſix Months together, and the *Sprouts* and green *Caul* all the reſidue of the year.

Their Seeds are ſown in *Auguſt* or *September* on Beds, where they may be defended all the Winter by Mats or other cloſe Shelter to preſerve them from Froſts.

In the Spring about the end of *March*, it is a good time to plant them out in Plants where they ſhould ſtand, which in a dripping Spring, or by diligent watring will yield your fair Flowers, but if they are not watred, they will bring forth ragged and divided Flowers.

You may ſow their Seed in *February* on a hot Bed, and have Flowers within a Month after thoſe that were ſown before Winter.

Thoſe that are of one growth uſually flower about a time, which to prevent, you may remove ſome of your Plants once every fortnight, for two, three, or four times, as you think good, which will keep them back from flowring, and ſo you may have them one after another as you pleaſe: Or you may cut off your Flower before it be fully ripe with a long Stalk, and ſet it in the ground as far as you can, and it will retain its ripening, but you muſt ſhade it, and give it a little Water, leſt it wither.

CHAP. V.

Of Melons, Cucumbers, &c.

Of Melons.

Melons or *Muskmelons*, as they are uſually termed from their pleaſant Scent, are in the more *Southern* Countries, not unworthily eſteem'd the moſt delicate fruit the *Kitchin Garden* affords, for in thoſe warmer Airs they attain a greater degree of Maturity, which exceedingly adds to their Guſt and Salubrity, however here in *England* being raiſed in the firſt of the Spring, and having thereby all the prime of the Summer, and heat that Nature and Art can give them, they are a pleaſant and a modiſh repaſt, and therefore deſerve your ſingular care in their propagation and management.

There are ſeveral ſorts of *Melons*, and called by ſeveral Names, but thoſe moſt uſually known are the *large ribbed Melon*, and the *ſmall round Melon.*

They are ſown in *February* at the full of the Moon in your hot Bed, (the making whereof you ſhall find at the end of this Book) the Seeds firſt ſteep'd in Milk twenty four hours, and then ſet two or three in a hole about an inch deep.

When

When your Seeds are in the ground, cover up your Bed to preſerve it warm, and when they are come up, then cover them with drinking-glaſſes, leaving room for a little Air near the ground.

Towards the end of *April* you may remove your *Melon* Plants out of the hot Bed, into the Bed wherein they are to grow all the Summer, which Bed, or at leaſt certain large holes in it, is to be of very rich light Mould: the beſt time for this Work is in an Evening after a fair day.

At their firſt removal they muſt be watred and defended from Sun and Cold, three or four days together, and afterwards from the Cold.

When the Plants grow large, you may cover them either with glaſs Bells made for that purpoſe, or with ſquare Caſes of Glaſs made by the Glaſiers for the ſame uſe. Be ſure keep them cloſe at Night, and give them ſome admiſſion of Air under the Glaſs, or at the top in the day time.

To prevent Froſts from hurting your Plants, and Hail from breaking your Glaſſes, if you have any forewarning of either, you may cover your Glaſſes with Peaſe-ſtraw or Mats.

When you water your *Melons* (which they expect only in very dry and hot Weather) water them at half a foot diſtance from the Root and not wet the Leaves.

Place a Tile under each *Melon*, it will lie the warmer upon it, and nip off the ſmall

ſhoots that exhauſt the ſap from the more leading Branches.

Some preſcribe to cover your *Melon* Bed two or three inches with Sand, to increaſe the heat of the Sun by reflection, but Tiles under the Fruit may do as well.

Alſo it is adviſed that you ſhelter your newly removed Plants from the heat of the Sun at Noon, and until four in the Afternoon, as well as from the Cold, and that until the Plants have gotten Leaves broad enough to cover their Stalks and Roots from the parching Sun.

When your *Melons* are as big as Tennis-Balls, then nip off the ſhoots at ſome diſtance beyond them at a Joynt, and the *Melons* will grow large.

Melons are known to be ripe when the Stalk ſeems as if it would part from the Fruit, when they begin to gild and grow yellow underneath, and by their fragrant Odour they yield, which increaſeth as they more and more ripen.

But every *Melon* appears not alike in colour when mature, therefore you muſt conſider their different Natures. If they are to carry far, then gather them when they begin to ripen, but if they are to ſpend immediately, then let them be through ripe.

When you gather your *Melons*, you may put them before they be cut into a Bucket of cold Water, for a minute of time, to refreſh them, which will make them eat cool and pleaſant, and with an excellent Flavour; as

it

it will mend a Bottle of Wine in hot Weather.

Leave ſome part of the Stalk to the *Melon*, leſt by being broken too near, the *Melon* languiſh and loſe the richneſs of its taſte: Let them not when you gather them be too green, nor over ripe.

Preſerve the Seeds of thoſe that are moſt early ripe, and prefer thoſe Seeds that lodged at the ſunny ſide of the *Melon*.

Cucumbers have been in very great eſteem in the more *Southern* Countries, and of late years are much improved in *England*, and become a general Condiment for the hot Seaſon of the year, as they are Crude from the *Garden*, and for the more cold Seaſon as they are preſerv'd in pickle. *Of Cucumbers.*

There are two ſorts of them, that is, the *large green Cucumber*, vulgarly called the *Horſe-Cucumber*, which the *French* call *Parroquets*. And the *ſmall white* or *more prickly Cucumber*, theſe are beſt for the Table green out of the *Garden*, but the other to preſerve. *Parroquets.*

They are planted and propagated after the ſame manner as are the *Melons*, only they require more watring, and withal they are much more hardy.

Although watring makes the *Cucumbers* more fruitful, yet they are more pleaſant and wholeſome if they have but little Water.

Pompions are much more hardy than *Melons* or *Cucumbers*; yet are they tender in their firſt ſpringing, and therefore are not uſually plant- *Of Pompions.*

ed until *April*, and then for some time after they are come up defended from the Cold.

They must be planted in rich old Dung, and require a large place to ramble in, they will lay their Fruit on the Ground, or on Scaffolds made for that purpose, or on Pales or dry Hedges.

Of Squashes There are lesser sorts of them that are lately brought into request that are called *Squashes*, the edible part whereof boyl'd and serv'd up with powdered Beef is esteem'd a good Sauce.

These and several others of the smaller kinds of *Pompeons* are raised and managed as the *Pompeon* or *Cucumber*.

CHAP. VI.

Of Sallad-Herbs.

BEsides the great variety of Esculent and Alimental Plants which we have already named, the greatest part whereof may be eaten by themselves, and not as Sauces or Sallads, there yet remain several excellent Herbs and Plants that are of great use in the Kitchin, and are very pleasing and wholesome at the Table, the principal whereof

Of the Lettuce. is the *Lettuce*, which contendeth with any of the former named Plants for Antiquity; it is an excellent

excellent Summer Sallad, cooling and refreshing, and for that use hath it been always propagated: And although there be several sorts of them, yet that one *Cabbage-Lettuce* being the best, eaten either raw or boyled, the other may be neglected.

They are usually sown in *February* and *March*, and unless the Weather prove very cold, they will flourish and yield you a Spring Sallad in the beginning of *April*, but if defended by any good defence, then will they be fit for use before that time.

Those that are sown in *March* or *April* in good rich Land will head very well; yet it is said they will head better if transplanted whilst they are young, although some are of another opinion.

Lettuce sown in the Autumn, then transplanted and preserv'd over the Winter, will head in the Spring before any that are sown and transplanted in the Spring.

The sorts of *Lettuce* that are usually accounted are, the *Cabbage*, *Lumbard*, *Roman*, *Arabian*, *Savoy*, *Rose*, Red and Curled *Lettuce*.

You may blanch the largest *Roman Lettuce* when they are at their full growth, by binding them up with Straw or raw Hemp, or by covering them with earthen Pots fit to enclose them, and afterwards heating the Pots with long Dung.

Of Purslain.

Purslain in some moist Islands between the Tropicks is a natural wild Plant, but here in *England* is propagated with some difficulty, and used as an excellent Sallad. It

It is tender in the Spring, the Frosts usually nipping it, but rather the drought or small dew Snails, for I have known more than once the Seeds of *Purslain*, that have been spontaneously fallen in the Autumn, to flourish in the Spring, notwithstanding the Winter, which indeed was not very severe.

But to have it early, you may sow it on the hot Bed, or in *April*, in any rich soil finely dressed, and after the Seeds are sown, to clap over the Bed with the back of your Spade, and water it, for it delighteth in moisture.

If it be sown thin, or transplanted apart, it will yield you fair Plants, either for Seed, or to pickle, or to boyl.

When the Seed looks very black, then gather the stalks and lay them abroad in the Sun, which will the better maturate the Seed; lay them on a Board or Cloth to preserve them from spilling, and house them in the night, and expose them in the day until they are ripe.

It is said that the Seed of three or four years old is better than the new.

Corn Sallad. *Corn Sallad* is well known to be an early and excellent *Sallad* in the first of the Spring; it is first raised by sowing of its Seed, but afterwards it will sow it self.

Spinage. *Spinage* is known to be an excellent Herb crude or boyl'd, it is raised of Seed sown early in the Spring, but much better if sown in *September*, that it may gain strength to withstand the Winter, as is by some affirm'd; these

Winter

Winter Plants are fitteſt for the Lent ſeaſon, the Spring Plants for the Summer.

Endive, *Succory*, *Beets* and *Orach*, are all of them good *Sallads* boyl'd, and are raiſed of Seeds in the Spring. *Endive, &c.*

Of *Sorrel*, there are ſeveral ſorts, but the largeſt is moſt proper for your *Garden*, ſerving for many uſes in the Kitchin, it's raiſed moſt eaſily of Plants which ſhould not be ſet too near, it being apt to ſpread and grow large. *Sorrel.*

There is an Herb called *Patience*, that is planted by Sets in ſome *Gardens*, and makes a very good boyl'd *Sallad*. *Patience.*

Borrage and *Bugloſs* are very well known for the excellent properties of their Leaves and Bloſſoms, and are not to want a Room amongſt your beſt Culinary Herbs. *Borrage and Bugloſs.*

Chervil may be ſown in the hot Bed to make an early *Sallad*, or in *March* for other times: The Seed lies long in the ground, you may therefore ſow it at ſeveral times, that you may have it young and tender throughout the Summer. This *Sallad* is much preferr'd for its fine biting taſt, before many other dull Herbs. There is another ſort of it called ſweet *Chervil*. *Chervil.*

Alliſanders are ſown in the Spring, and live over the ſucceeding Winter, and are blanch'd by ſurrounding them with long Dung, or covering them with Pots, and then are they fit to make an excellent *Sallad*, after the ſame manner is *Sceleri* ordered. Some ſet the Plants deep in the ground, as before was directed *Alliſanders & Sceleri.*

rected for the *Leeks*. Thus *Beets*, *Succory*, *Endive*, *Lettuce*, and these two Plants so blanch'd, make very good *Sallads*.

Smallage. *Smallage* is an Herb some use in their *Pottage*, and is raised by Seed.

Parsley. But *Parsley* is the most universally used in the Kitchin of all *Garden* Herbs. *Pliny* said of it so long since, that scarce any man there was but loved it, and that it was in so great repute in his time, that in *Achaia* they honoured it by Crowning the Victors in their sacred Games with Chaplets of it, and as divers were the opinions of Physicians then, as now of the vertues and qualities of it. This however we know, that it is an excellent Ingredient in most *Pottages*, *Sawces*, and *Sallads*, its way of sowing is generally known.

Garden Cresses. *Nasturtium* or *Garden Cresses* are sown in many *Gardens* for culinary uses.

Indian Cresses. *Nasturtium Indicum*, *Indian Cresses* or *Yellow Lark-spurs*, from a Flower are now become an acceptable *Sallad*, as well the Leaf as the Blossom. They are raised for early *Sallads* in the hot Bed, but sown in *April*, will grow very well on ordinary *Garden*-ground, and give you a plentiful encrease of Leaves and Blossoms. The Buds before they are throughly blown, are an excellent *Sallad* pickled, as *Clove-Gilliflowers* and *Cowslip Blossoms* usually are.

Tarragon. *Tarragon* for its fine biting tast is much used by some in their *Sallads*, and is encreased by Cions and Tops.

There

There are ſeveral other Herbs that are nouriſhed and propagated in *Gardens* for the uſe of the Kitchin, as *Blood-wort*, *Clary*, *Arach*, *Lang de beuf*, *Nep*, *Violets*, *Strawberries*, *Carraways*, *Fennel*, *Dill*, *Muſtard-ſeed*, *Rocket*, *Rampions*, *Ramſons*, *Sage of Jeruſalem*, and *Marigolds*. The Methods of raiſing and increaſing them being ſo well known, as alſo their Uſes, that it would be ſuperfluous here to deſcribe them.

CHAP. VII.

Of Sweet Herbs.

BEſides all thoſe before mentioned, there are divers *ſweet Herbs*, as they are termed, that are very neceſſary for the compounding many excellent Condiments, and to add a reliſh to the beſt Pottage, which ſhall be here briefly enumerated. *Of ſweet Herbs.*

Garden Mints were univerſally uſed for Sauces in *Pliny*'s time, and much commended for their ſingular Vertues, eſpecially the young red Buds in the Spring, with a due proportion of Vinegar and Sugar, refreſh the Spirits and ſtirreth up the Appetite, and is one of the beſt Sallads the *Garden* affords. There are divers ſorts of Mints, but the red *Garden* Mint is the beſt. *Of Mints.*

Sage

Of Sage. *Sage* is also an Herb or Shrub much used in the Kitchin, and the young Leaves thereof, especially of the red *Sage*, is a very wholsome Sallad in the Sprisig. The Slips thereof planted in *April* or *May* are very apt to grow.

There are several sorts of *Sage*, the *red*, *green*, *small*, and *variegated*, but the red is the best for most uses.

Of Marjoram. Of *Marjoram* there are several kinds: the *fine sweet*, which is yearly raised of Seed sown in *May*, the *vulgar sweet*, raised by Slips, and the *pot Marjoram* by the same way; there is also of this latter sort some that is *party-coloured*, or *White* and *Green*, and some only *White*, propagated for variety-sake; the use of these is commonly known.

Of Thyme. *Thyme* was anciently celebrated for its great plenty of Food it yieldeth for *Bees*; as *Virgil* writing of *Bees*:

At fessæ multâ referunt se nocte minores,
Crura Thymo plena.——

But those that youthful be, and in their prime,
Late in the Night return, laden with Thyme.

Pliny saith, that by the plenty or scarcity of the Blossoms of Thyme, you may foresee the plenty or scarcity of Honey for that year: But the worth of this Herb is not so much to be disputed in this place, as the usefulness of it in the Kitchin where it ought not to be wanting.

Of

Of *Thyme* there are many ſorts. The *Vulgar Engliſh*, the *Lemon Thyme*, ſo called from its moſt exact ſmell like a *Lemon*; *Gilded Thyme*, *Muſk* and *Maſtich Thyme*, which laſt is incomparably ſweet, and ought to be carefully preſerved; any of the other are fit for the Kitchin.

Of *Savory* there are two ſorts, the *Summer* and *Winter*. The former is ſo called, becauſe it is annual and raiſed of Seed: it is uſually ſown amongſt *Onions*, becauſe there is an ancient Tradition, that the growing of it there makes the *Onions* the more ſweet; if you let ſome of it ſtand to ſhed its Seed, it is ſo hardy that it will come up again the ſucceeding Spring, although the ground be again digged. *Of Savory.*

The *Winter-Savory* is ſo called, becauſe it lives over many Winters, and is increaſed by Cions as well as by Seed; the uſes of both are very well known in the Kitchin.

Hyſop is nominated amongſt culinary Herbs, although not ſo much in uſe in the Kitchin: as for Medicine or its natural ſweetneſs, it is ſo vulgar an Herb, that every one knows its propagation. *Of Hyſop.*

There are many other ſweet Herbs that are uſeful in the Kitchin, although not ſo generally as the former, but according to the particular occaſions that require them, as *Penny-royal*, *Sweet Maudlin*, *Tanſie*, *Balm*, *Baſil*, *Burnet*, and *Coaſt-Mary*, alſo *Lavendar*, and *Cammomil* are not to be wanting, though not eſculent, in any Caſe. *Of ſeveral others.*

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of some other Esculent Vegetables.

THere are some Plants, Herbs, or parts of them, that are Esculent either of themselves, or in Condiments, that are not usually propagated in *Gardens* for that purpose, as the young Buds of Hops boyl'd do much resemble *Asparagus* in the eating, and are very pleasant and wholesome where the other are not to be had; the young shoots of a new lopp'd *Elder-Tree* being boyl'd, are esteem'd a most excellent Dish; the ordinary Buds of *Elder*, and the red young tops of Nettles, and of *Water-cresses*, and also of *Brook-lime*, every Herb-woman can tell you are good Spring *Sallads* or *Pottage-herbs*.

The green tops of *young Pease* cut off and boyl'd, are reported to be a most delicate Dish, *quære*, Whether if they being cut off, the remaining Roots will not emit new shoots, and produce a fair Crop of later Pease? If they will, then may you have late Pease better this way than by sowing late.

Green Corn bruised yields a Juyce that is used in the Kitchin in Esculents, and so may be reckon'd amongst the number, notwithstanding my Lord *Bacon* did not esteem it Esculent. *Cham-*

Champignons, *Muſhromes*, or *Mouſſerons*, have been ever reputed a dainty Diſh, in the choice and preparing of which the ancient *Romans* took a great delight. Yet then were ſeveral perſons poyſoned with the uſe of ſuch of them, that were of a venemous nature, and in theſe colder Climates ſome ſorts of them are not much to be confided in. *Muſhromes.*

Thoſe that are edible here with us, are either *Muſhromes* of the *Woods*, and grow by the borders of *Woods* and *Forreſts*, and are very large; or *Muſhromes* of the *Meadows* and ſweet *Paſtures*, which grow frequently where Cattel feed, which uſually flouriſh in the *Autumn*, and are moſt eſteem'd, becauſe of their Beauty and whiteneſs above, and Vermilion beneath, having alſo a pleaſant ſcent with them.

It is ſaid that you may raiſe *Muſhromes* in Beds in your *Gardens*, by preparing a Bed with the ſoyl of *Mules* or *Aſſes*, and covering it over four fingers thick with rich Dung, and after it hath laid a while to cool, then to caſt on it the parings and refuſe of *Muſhromes*, and old rotten *Muſhromes* with the Water uſed about them, and in a ſhort time your Bed will produce them. Or ſuch Water poured on *Melon* Beds will cauſe it to ſend forth *Muſhromes*.

It is probable that theſe, though unperfect Plants, may have a Seed, which ſown in an apt place may produce others of the ſame Species.

Century 6. My Lord *Verulam* in his Natural Hiſtory gives a very good Character of them, imputing unto them two ſtrange properties: The one, that they yield ſo delicious a Meat; the other, that they come up ſo haſtily; I have known one of about a foot in diameter, almoſt round and full, of ſcarce twice 24 hours growth.

The ſame honourable Lord tells you, that it's dangerous ſurfeiting with them, and gives you ſeveral Reports, that the Bark of white or red Poplar cut ſmall, and caſt into Furrows well dunged, will cauſe the ground to put forth *Muſhromes* at all ſeaſons of the year fit to be eaten.

He alſo adds a Report, that Harts-horn ſhaven or in ſmall pieces mix'd with Dung, and watred, putteth up *Muſhromes*.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of general Improvements, and Miſcellaneous Experiments.

SECT. I.

Of improving Garden *Ground by Labour only.*

HAving thus briefly given you a particular of ornamental, as well as uſeful Parts and Materials for your ſeveral *Gardens*, and the ſpecifical ways of preparing, ordering, and managing of the various Plants, Flowers, and other Curioſities uſually growing in them, it now remains that ſomething be ſaid as to the more general manner of improving your Ground, and preparing of Dungs, Soyls, and Compoſts proper for your uſe, and making of hot Beds, with many other things neceſſary to be known by ſuch that delight in the improvement of *Hortulans*.

Of the general mixtures of Earths the one with the other, to qualifie their Natures by adding that of a contrary, I have before Diſcourſed.

ſcourſed. Of the preparation of Earth without any ſuch mixtures, Sir *Hugh Platt* hath given you an Ænigmatical Deſcription, calling it his *Philoſophical Garden*; his Precept is, 'To 'pave a ſquare Plot with Brick (if covered 'with Plaiſter of *Paris* the better) making up 'the ſides of Brick alſo, plaiſtred likewiſe; let 'it be of a convenient depth, fill it with the 'beſt vegetative *Saturn* which you can get, 'that hath ſtood two years, or one at the leaſt, 'quite within his own Sphere, make contrition of the ſame; and be ſure to avoid all obſtructions, imbibe it with *Aqua Cæleſtis* in a 'true proportion: grind it once a day till it 'be dry; being dry, let it ſtand two or three 'days without any imbibition, that it may the 'better attract from all heavenly influence, continuing then alſo a Philoſophical Contrition every day, (this grinding muſt alſo be uſed in 'the vegetable works, where the Mercury of 'Herbs is uſed inſtead of *Aqua Cæleſtis*) during 'all the time of preparation: Then plant what 'rare Flowers, Fruits, or Seeds, you pleaſe 'therein; the ſame Philoſopher then tells you, 'That (if his Theory of Nature deceive him 'not) that *Saturn* ſo enriched from the Heavens, without the help of any manner of 'Soyl, Marl, or Compoſt (after one years revolution) will make the ſame to flouriſh 'and fructifie in a ſtrange and admirable manner.

By his Vegetable *Saturn* may be underſtood, ſuch Earth that is moſt prone to ſend forth Plants;

Plants; by its ſtanding ſo long within its own Sphere, is only that it hath been covered either naturally by Turf, or artificially by Building, or ſuch like, that it hath been prevented from waſting its fœcund Nature, by ſending forth or bearing Vegetables. The beſt of ſuch reſted fruitful Earth, is to be put in what quantity you pleaſe into your brick or ſtone Ciſtern (being made proportionable) but not to deep leſt it hinder you from ſtirring the Earth to the bottom, and will not permit it to dry ſo eaſily, this muſt be reduced to a fineneſs; therefore it would not be amiſs to let it paſs the ſieve or ſcreen before you put it in your Ciſtern. The imbibition of this Earth with *Aqua Cæleſtis* can be no other than with Rain-water, which is exhaled by the influence of the Sun, and in thē Air attracteth a Volatile Nitre, which deſcending with the Rain on the dry Earth is ſoon imbibed again; this Volatile Spirit or Nitre that thus ariſeth in ſo great a quantity, is that *Spiritus Mundi* that cauſeth all Vegetation, and wherewith the Air it ſelf is filled, and by ſeveral ways coagulated, and by the often irrigating the Earth with it, the Earth is the more fertilized: But this way of continuing the Contrition, or ſtirring it every day to dry it, makes the Earth much eaſier to attract the Water, which being added in a true or ſo little a proportion, that it may not wet but moiſten only, the Earth will leave its nitrous or vegetating Vertue behind it, when the Phlegmatick part fumes away again by the ſtirring of the Earth,

which if it were added in too great a quantity would exhauſt the nitrous ſpirit that was before in the Earth. For it is a general Obſervation amongſt Philoſophers, that as the greater overpowereth the leſſer, ſo if the matter you add be volatile, & greater in proportion than that which is fixt, it is apt to volatilize that which before was fixt, being added unto it: and on the contrary, that if the volatile matter be leſs in proportion than the fixt, to which you add it, then is that which is fixt apt to fix the volatile; therefore did our Author wiſely add, that the imbibition ſhould be made in a true proportion, which is, that the Rain-water ſhould be only for an eaſie humectation, and not too great a wetting; then he tells you, that it ſhould ſtand two or three days without any imbibition, that is, between every humectation the Earth ſhould be throughly dryed as the Air or Wind can dry it, which will take up ſuch a ſpace of time, notwithſtanding your daily ſtirring it; for the drier any open terreſtial Matter is, it doth not only the more eaſily attract, but more perfectly fixeth that which otherwiſe would be more volatile; although our Author hath not given caution of it, yet it is preſumed that the ſquare Plot or Ciſtern he preſcribes ſhould be covered or defended from the Sun, which by his Rays is apt to attract much of the *Spiritus Mundi*, or Matter of Vegetables, where there is plenty unfixt; as is evident from the various ſmells that are exhaled by it, and Colours alſo much ſooner faded by the Sun-beams than by the heat

of

of Fire: and also from the Rain which in great showers is apt to over-moisten it, and in continued Rains, to prevent its drying; therefore your Rain-water should be kept in a Cistern made for that purpose, where the longer it remains the better it will prove; such Vertue always encreaseth whilst it is in its proper Matrix, as appeareth by Urine kept long, which yieldeth much more spirit than whilst it is new.

By the Author's saying that this grinding is to be used in the Vegetable-work, where the Mercury of Herbs is used instead of *Aqua Cœlestis*; it's probable here he means the expres'd Juice of green Vegetables, which virtually hath in it the matter of Vegetables, and may have the same effect on the Earth in a small quantity and little time, as the Rain-water hath in a greater quantity by the long continuation of the operation.

This way of contrition, imbibition, and coagulation, enricheth the Earth after the same manner, by covering it many years with Building, by which means Salt-petre is increased: only by this operation you may effect your Design in one year with labour and diligence, which there you must wait many years for: And by this may you heighten the Vertue of your Soil to a far higher degree, it being manual, than the other which is natural, and will not exceed the ordinary bounds limited in this Climate.

That our Author's *Saturn* is our natural and common Earth, and his *Aqua Cœlestis*, Rain-water, may be concluded from his own Expressions, used in the same Description of his *Philosophical Garden*, which are, 'That if the 'Earth it self, after it hath thus conceived from 'the Clouds, were then left to bring forth her 'own Fruits and Flowers in her own time, and 'no Seeds or Plants placed therein by the hand 'of man, it is held very probable, that this 'heavenly Earth so manured with the Stars, 'would bring forth strange and glorious Fruits 'and Flowers, *&c.* Which is not improbable, if we consider the fertility of the Waters of *Nile*, which are first exhausted in those hotter *African* Regions, by the power of the Sun's influence (when in a due Latitude) and condensed by the Air far more fruitful, as well as the Earth, in Nitre there, than in these colder Regions, yielding that great and fertile Flood, whose precipitate or setling slime so far inricheth the dried and thirsty Earth, that it not only spontaneously produceth abundance of Vegetables, but Animals also.

I know no reason but by observing our Author's Direction in this Climate, a diligent Operator may advance the vertue of our Earth to the same degree, or greater, than the *Egyptian* Soil, and then may it answer his Expectations, in producing such Rarities, that by no other ways are here attainable; for if any man would advance or improve Nature, he must tread in Nature's steps, and trace her to the Foun-

Foundation. Next unto this extraordinary improvement of Earth by labour, without any other mixture than Earth and Rain-water, which many will not experiment, becauſe of the length of time required in it, you may facilitate the Operation by often ſtirring or digging your Land, and reducing it to a fineneſs by skreening it, which alſo is a means to cleanſe it from Weeds, Stones, Worms, *&c.* that annoy your tender Plants; by reiterating of which Work, you expoſe the Earth thus opened to the Air, Froſt, Snow and Rain, and capacitate it to receive the benign Influences of the Heavens, and prevent the exhauſting of the nitrous Spirit by the growth of any Vegetables in it. This Operation the longer you continue it the better, the time for the beginning of it is not material, ſo that you let it receive the effects of both extream Seaſons: like unto this are your fallowings of Land for ſeveral Grains, eſpecially the fallowings and twi-fallowings for Wheat, long before the laſt plowing at the Seed-time, and in ſeveral caſes a contrition or dragging after the fallowings, which proves a conſiderable improvement of ſtiff Land. Thus may you ſee how nature is improved by induſtry only, and that but by treading in her own ſteps; for Earth often trod on by Men or Beaſts in the Streets or High-ways, is very much enriched by ſuch expoſure, and Earth defended from the Sun and Air, in like manner becomes fertile, although from different Cauſes, the former from

from the volatile Nitre, and other influences in the Air, Rain and Snow, the latter from the condenſation of the *Spiritus Mundi*, or nitrous breathings of the Earth, and both by reaſon that thoſe fertile qualities are not exhauſted by Vegetation.

But as this latter Operation is more facile than the former, ſo you cannot expect that it ſhould produce Effects anſwerable to the other, which is very much to be preferr'd by ſuch that are curious; although this latter way may yield you a ſufficient recompence for your labour, yet the former cannot but far tranſcend it.

SECT. II.

Of ſeveral ways of enriching Earth by mixtures.

IT is without queſtion that Earth or Mould is to be made more fertile than naturally it is, by mixing therewith ſeveral Materials that contain in them much of the vegitating Spirit, as the Aſhes of any manner of burnt Vegitables. For by ſuch burning is waſted the more phlegmatick and uſeleſs moiſture, and are fix'd the more ſolid and ſubſtantial parts: The ſame effect hath Fire on the Turf, or rooty ſurface of the Earth; this ſmegmatick or oyly matter that is left by the fire, in

a moderate proportion applyed to any Earth highly enricheth it, and makes it apt for fructification, as appeareth by the vulgar Experiment of Burn-beating of Land, which yieldeth ſo fair Crops of Wheat and other Grain. In which operation the Ruſtick obſerves, that over-burning the Turf is injurious, and that a more moderate burning maketh the ground more fertile. The Reaſon is plain; for in the burning of any Vegitable, a gentle, eaſie, and ſmothering Fire doth not waſt the volatile nitrous Spirit ſo much as a quick, but cauſeth much more of it to fix and remain behind.

Theſe fixed Salts that are thus obtained, are the principal Salts that are ſo much celebrated for the improvements of Earth, to render it more fruitful, although there are many other Salts near in affinity to theſe, that do in ſome degree meliorate Earth, as the Salts that are in *Blood*, *Urine*, *Soot*, and ſeveral other things of the like nature, by the mixture of thoſe Materials with the Earth, or ſprinkling it with them, whereby the Rains uſually carry down their Vertue to the Roots of your Plants.

The parts of Animals, as *Skins*, *Hair*, *Feathers*, *Fleſh* and *Bones*, *Horns*, *Hoofs*, &c. contain in them much of theſe Vegetating Salts, although Volatile, yet in ſuch compact Bodies, they continue until they are by your Plants attracted, as many Husbandmen have made Experiments, of the extraordinary Vertue that

is

is in old Woollen Rags, in fertilizing Land for Corn, giving ten times the price for a load of them to lay on their Corn-ground, that they will for a Load of Dung, and are yet great gainers by it, and fetch them from near *London* into *Hartfordshire* into the Bargain: *Wool*, *Hair* and *Feathers*, are near of a nature, and therefore have near the same effects.

Fish, and *Bones* of *Beast's*, *Flesh*, &c. are generally known to add very much to the improvement of Land; but for *Garden* uses, it will be more conducing to your purpose, to let the same be throughly putrified, and reduced to a moderate compost with Earth before you apply it, for all nauseous and ill savoured Materials are to be excluded your *Gardens*, either for the Kitchin, or for Delight.

Horns, *Hoofs*, and *Skins*, contain in them much of a rich Volatile Salt; and it hath been anciently observed, and in such Countries where naturally the ground is more replete with Nitre, and more fertile than here, that these materials have very much fertilized *Garden*-ground, especially for the *Asparagus*, that requires strong nourishment; therefore the shavings or odd pieces of Horn, and the lesser Horns and the Hoofs, and other excrementitious parts of Beasts, at the common Slaughter-houses may be obtain'd, to make your deep Beds for *Asparagus*, *Artichoaks*, and such like, and may not be unuseful in enriching your Ground for your choicest Flowers.

The

The ſhreds of tann'd *Leather*, partaking as well of the Salt of the Oaken Bark and Lime, as of the Beaſt, muſt of neceſſity prove a very great improver of your *Garden* ground, and may be had in great quantities at the Shooe-makers, where they uſually burn them. Theſe ſhreds ſoon rot, and with *Rags*, *Hoofs*, *Horns*, *Hair*, &c. mixed with a good quantity of Earth, and laid in a Pit, and ſometimes watred, will make an excellent Compoſt for your Kitchin *Garden*, if afterwards diſpoſed of in proper Beds.

Of Sheeps Dung.

Take Sheeps Dung and put Water to it, (in ſome Veſſel) ſo much as by ſtirring may reduce it to a Pap, and when it is all throughly diſſolved, mix ſome fine ſifted Earth with it; let the Earth be four, five, or ſix times more in quantity than the Sheeps Dung, according as the Earth is in goodneſs: If it be a poor ſandy Earth, the more of the Sheeps Dung it requires to enrich it; if it be a ſtiff Ground, the more it requires to make it light, but an indifferent mellow Earth requires the leſs, for Sheeps Dung is one of the richeſt of Dungs, as may be obſerved from the great improvement that is made by Flocks of Sheep, being folded on the poor champion Lands, where ſuch Land yields much Corn, when not being ſo improved it will yield but little, and this from one only folding in ſeveral Months, or ſometimes in a whole Year together; Deer and Goats Dung are much of the ſame nature with Sheeps Dung. The reaſon of

of which extraordinary fertility in that Soyl is from the well chewing the Food, the long continuance in the Body, and the not (or but little) drinking of the Beast. For Sheep and Neat chew the Cud, by which means their Food is made fine, both these (and so do Deer and Goats) retain their Meat longer than Horses or Swine, who feed more grosly and hastily, the Dung of the one being like whisps of Hay, of the other like a mixture of all sorts of Filth. Also *Sheep* and *Deer* drink but little, which make their Dung and their Urine (which also is very rich could it be preserved) very fertile. *Neat* drink much, which very much tempereth and allayeth the heat and fertile nature of the Soyl. Earth thus mixed with Sheeps Dung dissolved, is very excellent for most sorts of *Fibrous* rooted *Flowers*, because the decay of the Dung (which will be in time) leaves the ground porous, that the Fibres thereby as well insinuate themselves and spread abroad, as they do contract the richness the Dung affords them: *Tuberous* rooted *Flowers* also affect this mixture: *Artichoaks* delight in it exceedingly, and Sheeps Dung applied to the Roots of them, and then often watred, whereby the Vertue of it may be conveyed into them, makes the Plant yield you fair Fruit; most *Garden*-Tillage affect it, for it is not only a very rich Soyl, but renders the ground light and porous, which is very advantagious to Tillage.

A

A mixture of *Neats* Dung after the ſame manner, is very good for moſt of the ſame uſes, as is that of Sheeps Dung. And better in ſome particular caſes, for that if you have occaſion to remove or plant any good Flower in the Summer-time, or out of its proper Seaſon, ſuch a mixture of Earth and *Neats* Dung made into a liquid Pap, and the Tree or Flower placed in it, that the liquid matter may encompaſs the Root, will ſo adhere to it, and be ſo cool and moiſt, that it will cauſe the Plant to thrive as well, as if it had been planted or removed in its proper ſeaſon. *Neats Dung.*

Horſe Dung whilſt new is the hotteſt of Dungs, laid in a great quantity together, by reaſon that a Horſe chews his Meat but little, feeds haſtily, and evacuates it in a ſhort time; ſo that like chopt Straw or Hay, but beginning to ferment in the Belly of the Horſe, it continues fermenting after it is in the Dunghil; but if it be laid up with the Litter that is uſually moiſtned with the Urine of the Horſe, and after it is throughly rotten, which will be much the ſooner if it lye in a moiſt place, or be often watred by Rain or by Hand, and turned withal, or caſt, as the Husbandman uſually terms it; it then makes an excellent Compoſt for your Kitchin *Garden*. *Horſe Dung.*

In your Swine-yard, or places where Swine uſually tread or feed, the Earth is very much improved by their dunging and piſſing, which trampled into and mixt with the Earth, makes it become a very good Compoſt, eſpecially *Swines Dung.*

to

to allay that rankneſs or over-freeneſs of ſome very light and rich Soyls, that breed the Canker in Trees, and too many Worms and other Vermin, and Inſects that deſtroy your choiceſt Plants. This Dung or Earth ſo inriched, being a fat cooling Compoſt, may be with ſucceſs uſed in both your *Gardens*, but rather amongſt your Fruit-Trees, where it excels.

Aſſes Dung. *Aſſes* Dung is near of the nature of *Sheeps* Dung, *Deers* Dung, *&c.* ſpoken of before, although not altogether ſo rich.

Pigeons Dung. The Dung of all Corn-fed Fowl is very hot at the firſt, eſpecially that of Pigeons, becauſe they feed haſtily, and evacuate the ſame digeſted in a ſhort time, and urine not. So that their Drink is no more but only to digeſt and nouriſh, and not to carry away any of the vertue of the Meat, nor leſſen the ſtrength or fertility of the Dung. Experience hath taught the Husbandman, that in the Champion Countries, where great ſtore of Pigeons Dung is to be had, the ſame ſown but thinly with Barley, makes a poor Ground yield a good Crop; for when but thinly ſown, the Rain and Air ſoon qualifie its preſent heat, which if it were laid thick would burn the Corn, eſpecially at that ſeaſon, or elſe make it grow too rank, which is as great a fault as its being too ſhort. Therefore you may well conclude, that theſe Dungs laid in a heap in the open Air, and moiſtned by the Rain, or otherwiſe, until their heat is over, will make a moſt rich Compoſt for either *Garden*, but more eſpecially for your Kitchin *Garden*. I

I only here give you a Caution, not to use Malt dust in your *Garden*, for there are many Seeds of pernicious Weeds in it, that have passed all the imbibitions, fermentations and exsiccations of the Malt, and yet retain their vegetating nature, and will furnish you with new species of Weeds out of the Fields, that your *Garden* before was not acquainted withal. *Malt dust.*

The setlings of Waters where there is least current, is the best, but the Mud or residence of any Water, unless it be over-much sandy, is excellent to qualifie the Nature of your Ground; if your Ground be light, then use stiff Mud, if your Ground be stiff or cold, then use light or sandy residences: These mixtures are good for all sorts of *Garden*-ground. *Mud of Ponds.*

The Washings of Streets or High-ways after Rain, yield great store of Settling or Mud, that is very profitable for *Garden*-ground, especially the residency of such Water that descends from Chalky Hills, applied to light Ground. The Mud in the bottom of Pools, wherein Horses are usually washed, is also very good if duely applied.

Any Ashes or other matter whatsoever that contains Salt is good, so that the quantity of the matter containing the Salt, doth not too far exceed the Salt contained in it, as usually Wood-ashes after they have been in the Wash-house, Soap-house, or elsewhere, have the most of their Salt extracted, and then applied to your Ground sterilizeth it, unless it be to a strong Clay-ground, then it will make it lighter although not richer. *Salts.*

The Aſhes of any burnt Vegetables are excellent, as before we obſerved; a mixture of Lime is very good in moſt Grounds, but the Salt of Lime extracted by Water, and your Ground watred therewith, is much to be preferred. It hath alſo this ſingular property, that it makes the Worms ſoon leave the place watred therewith, and expoſe themſelves to the Air where they ſoon periſh, or to the Birds who devour them. The ſame effect is wrought by any *Alkalizate Salts*, or Salts produced by Fire.

Murc. The *Murc* or refuſe after the preſſings of *Cider* and rotten Fruit, are very good to mix with your Earth, but it muſt be after it hath lain a long time in ſome pit or heap until it hath loſt its ſavour, and until the Seeds or Kernels are dead, leſt they germinate and incommode your *Garden*.

Rotten Wood. Any drexy Wood, or the duſt of the Wood-pile, but more eſpecially rotten Willow, is excellent to make the Earth light for moſt fibrous rooted Flowers. The ſame is Saw-duſt, if it firſt lye in a moiſt place until it be rotten, and hath its acidity abated or digeſted.

Straw. Straw or any dry Vegetables become rotten and mix'd with Earth, maketh it light and fit for your choiceſt Anemonies, and all Fibrous rooted Flowers.

Tobacco. *Tobacco* dryed or cur'd, and afterwards mix'd with your *Garden*-mould, will doubtleſs exceedingly enrich it: For it is of a very high and ſtrong nature, and containeth much of

of a Volatile Nitrous Salt in it, and is reported to be equally as effectual in the tanning of Leather as the Bark of the Oak, which if it be true, as I have no reason to doubt it, it may prove a considerable improvement of many Country Farms, and of great benefit and advantage to the Nation in general, either of which uses is better than that to which it is now usually put unto.

SECT. I.

Of Watring Gardens.

BEsides the mixture of several Materials and Composts with Land to make it fruitful, you may add enriched Waters, which serve where you cannot conveniently change your ground, or remove your Plant, as in several *Flower-Trees*, and *Artichoaks*, *Asparagus*, &c. *Fat Waters.*

That Water is very good that is taken out of standing Pools, where Cattel usually resort to shade or cool themselves in hot weather, and leave their Dung in it, which by the stirring of their feet enricheth the Water; Ducks and Geese also much improve standing Pools where they frequent.

Several Waters may be prepared, in which you may steep or macerate your Seeds or Pulse, to make them sprout the sooner, or come the

fairer, and with the same Water may you irrigate your Ground: many Receipts there are to that end, I shall only mention some of them.

Take Sheeps Dung well dissolv'd in warm Water, and after it hath stood twelve hours, strain it through a course Cloth with compression, for it is so slimy that it comes through with difficulty; therefore I suppose a decantation may serve. To two or three Gallons of this Liquor add a handful of Bay-salt, and somewhat a lesser proportion of Salt-peter, and let them both be dissolved in the former Water, which to expedite let it be made luke-warm, and stirred often, in which Liquor let your Seeds lye for twenty four hours or more, till they are throughly swelled, Pulse need not to lye so long; then take out your Seeds or Pulse, and expose them thinly on some Floor to the Air, (not the Sun) until they be half dry, then sow them. It is also prescribed that the remainder of the Sheeps Dung that was not made Liquid, should be dryed and calcined, and the fix'd Salt extracted out of it, and added to the former composition; but it's more probable that another parcel of Sheeps Dung calcined, would yield more and better Salt, than the remaining part of the dissolved Dung. This latter part makes the process too difficult and troublesome, and adds but little to the vertue of it, any other fixed Salt having the same effect as that so hard to be obtained.

This

This Liquor is more effectual for the watring of Plants, than it is for the maceration of Seeds, and so are any other salt Waters. Some add a greater quantity of Salt-petre, and Bay-salt, some only Salt-petre, others use Pigeons Dung instead of Sheeps Dung; also Lime-water after that manner enrich'd with Sheeps Dung, Pigeons Dung, or Neats Dung, is equal in Vertue, if not exceeding that, to which Salt-peter or Bay-salt is added. Every Husbandman hath experimented the effect of Lime, the Salt only extracted by the Rains enriching the Earth occasioning so plentiful a Crop, the other remaining part like a *Caput Mortuum*, only tempereth the Land for the future, and maketh it more sad where before it was too light, which if the Land did not require it, then doth Lime (after its salt is wasted) much injury to the Land whereon it is laid.

Nitre or Salt-petre only, dissolv'd in Water, a pound to four or five Gallons, is held to be very effectual to enrich barren Mould. This agrees with our Observations about Earth covered with building, or otherwise defended from Sun and Rain, for the generation of Nitre.

Some commend the sprinkling of Milk and Rain-water on the Beds, first sifted over with Lime pulverished, whether by pounding or slacking with water it mattereth not, (neither of which can improve or abate the vertue or quantity of its Salt, the thing we desire) and after every watring sifting more Lime. This

way may not be amiss for such Lands, that the *Caput Mortuum* of the Lime remaining after the Salt is extracted, will not prejudice, and for such Plants that the Lime lying on the ground will not injure. The Milk may be left out, not signifying so much as the value of it amounts unto, the Liquor wherein Flesh Meats (whether fresh or salt) have been boyled, is much better and easier obtained. The Salt of Lime (extracted with water in some large wooden Vessel) containeth in it the same improving Vertue, and is less troublesome to make use of, and free from the inconveniences that attend the other way.

Much more might be said concerning these improving Liquids as well as Solids, but that Mr. *Evelin.* the most learned and experienc'd of Rural or Hortulane Authors, hath lately been very copious on the same subject.

Only I may here advise the unexperienced not to water his Plants in either *Garden*, with a cold Spring or Well-water, if he can obtain any other, which if he cannot, then to expose this to the Sun or Air, some time before he useth it, or enrich it by some pinguid mixtures, as Lime, Ashes, Dung, or such like, will quickly qualifie it for his purpose, by abating the sudden coldness of it to the Plant. For it is a very great injury to most tender Plants, to be diluted with cold Water from the Well or Spring, and check their growth exceedingly, as may be observed in a bleeding Vine, to the naked Roots of which if you pour store of cold

Spring

Spring or Well-water, it ſuddenly checks the aſcenſion of the Sap, by means whereof the bleeding ceaſeth, and the Wound conſolidates again, before the more liberal aſcent of the Sap, much more then will it check the growth of a weak Herb or Flower.

Alſo as it is obſerved to ſow in the duſt, whereby the Seeds gradually ſwell from the cold Dews of the Night and Air, and are made ready to ſprout with the next Rains, ſo it is not good to water new ſown Seeds, until the long defect of ſhowers invite you to it, leſt you waſh off the Earth from them before they have ſprouted, whereby they faſten themſelves the better to endure a watring: ſome Seeds, as *Radiſh, Lettuce, Gilliflower-ſeed,* &c. remain not long in the Earth, and therefore may in two or three days for want of Rain, be watred by hand; but *Tulip, Auricula, Parſley, Carrot-ſeed, &c.* lye longer in the ground, and require not ſo ſpeedy an irrigation.

All Seed ought to be watred by the ſmalleſt or rain-like drops as you can, and not too much; for haſty watring, and haſty ſhowers, diſcover them.

For moſt Flowers and Plants whoſe Leaves lie near the ground, it is beſt to water them at ſome diſtance, by making a Ring round the Plant a little hollow, and pouring the Water into it, whereby you annoy not the Leaves with your diſcolouring Water, or chill them with the coldneſs of it.

In all warm Weather the Evening is the best season to water in, because the Water will have time to sink into the Earth, and the Plant to attract it before the heat of the Sun exhales it; but in cold Weather, and when the Nights are cold, the Morning is the most proper time, that the superfluous moisture may be evaporated before the cold Night overtake you, and chill your Plant.

By no means use Liquors, either naturally hot as Spirits, or artificially made so by heating it over the Fire.

A Plant that delights in moisture, or a drooping Plant, that you may suppose Water will preserve, may be watred by filtration. Which is by placing an earthen Pot full of Water near the Plant, and putting therein the end of a List of Woollen-cloth, the other end thereof to hang down on the outside of the Pot to the ground, near the root of the Plant; by means of which List, if it be thick enough, the Water will filtrate or distil over the brim of the Pot, through the List of Woollen, so long as any Water is in reach of the List in the Pot, always observing that the end of the List in the outside of the Pot, be longer than that in the inside, and that the List be thoroughly wet before you add it. The Reasons of this operation, which many Country Colona's daily experiment, we will not here discourse of.

Watring of Flower-pots. To water your Flower-pot, that the Water may the easier descend to the bottom, and throughout the whole Pot, you may before you

you fill it with Earth, place in it a Pipe of Lead, Latton, or such like, close at the bottom, with divers holes at the sides of it, let the Pipe extend in height to the top of the Pot, and when the Pot is full of Earth, and planted with Flowers, and that you cannot conveniently otherwise water it, then with a Funnel fill the Pipe with Water, and reiterate your filling of it, until you think there is enough, and by the holes on the sides of the Pipe, the Water will moisten the whole Pot of Earth. The Water you use here ought to be meliorated by some of the former ways: For Earth thus separated from the Ground, is more apt to decay than that which is remaining on its natural Foundation, which continually receives an improvement, by perspiration of the vegetating spirit.

There are several sorts of Watring-pots in use for *Gardens*, the most useful is the common Watring-pot made of tinn'd Plate or Latton; the nose or end of the Spout, whereof, is covered with a Cover, wherein are many small perforations, that the Water may force through in small streams, and besprinkle your Plants or Seeds like unto Rain. This Cover is made to take off and on, to cleanse, at pleasure. *Watring-pots.*

There is another sort of Watring-pot that hath a small hole at the bottom, and another at the top, so that when you sink it into a Vessel of Water, it will fill by the lower Pipe or hole, the Air passing out at the hole at the top where the handle is also: when it is

full

full take it by the handle, and ſtop the hole with your thumb, and when you come to the Plant you intend to water, you may eaſe the hole whereon your thumb lies, and as you pleaſe let the Water out at the Pipe in the bottom; for as the Air comes in at the top, the Water will iſſue out at the bottom, and ſo may you ſtop it, and open it with your thumb at your pleaſure; with this Pot you may eaſily let the Water down on your Plants that can bear with a waſhing ſhower.

You may water any ground by the firſt ſort of Watring-pot, with any enriched or thick Water, if you take off the Cover of the Pipe, and convey the ſame Water about the roots of any Plants without fouling the Leaves or Flowers.

Alſo you may have a ſmall Engine made like one of the Engines for the raiſing of Water to extinguiſh Fire withal, and place it in a Frame to drive to and fro about your *Garden*; you may fill it with Water, and the Spout or Pipe with a perforated Cover, like unto the common Watring-pots (but not ſo broad as to ſpread the Water ſo much) with this Engine may you imitate Rain over any of your Beds at a diſtance, and waſh your Wall-trees from Vermine, and refreſh them at your pleaſure.

To preſerve your Watring-pots. Any of theſe Watring-pots may be preſerved for many years from Ruſt, (to which they are very apt) by painting them over with Linſeed Oyl and Red Lead.

SECT.

SECT. IV.

Of making Hot Beds.

IT is evident to all, that moſt Plants do naturally obſerve the ſeaſon of the year in their germination, growth, and maturation; and although they are removed into another Climate, yet do they incline to the obſervation of the ſame time as they did in their own former natural place of their growth, as the *Perſian Iris*, *American Strawberry*, and ſeveral others, which make them the more acceptable as they come earlier or later than others of the ſame kind. So is it with many other Flowers, Fruits, or Herbs; for we annually obſerve how acceptable a Diſh of early Peaſe is over what they are when later and common; and ſo are *Aſparagus*, *Cucumbers*, *Melons*, &c.

The growth of moſt Plants is quickned by a warm poſition, as under a warm Fence or Wall, and by an artificial heat, as by being planted againſt a place where Fire is uſually kept, or by watring them with Waters impregnated by hot Dungs, which will very much accelerate germination.

To raiſe a Sallad in few hours.

If you would have Herbs to ſprout immediately, then lay a Bed of unſlak'd Lime powdered, with a mixture of Aſhes, if you pleaſe, or without; on that a Lay of hot Dung, and on

on that another Lay of Lime, and then on that a Lay of fine rich Mould, wherein ſow your Seeds, as *Lettuce*, *Purſlain*, *Corn Sallad*, *Parſley*, &c. firſt ſteep'd in White-wine, or ſome of the former prepared Waters, and water them, when ſown, with ſome of the ſame richeſt Waters, and they will ſuddenly appear above ground, and as you water them ſo will they proſper. This ſhould be done within doors, leſt the coldneſs of the Air ſhould impede their growth, the often watring them facilitates their nouriſhment.

But the hot Beds that are moſt uſeful, and whereon you are to raiſe your tender Exoticks, and your early Flowers; and alſo to raiſe and bring forward your *Melons*, *Cucumbers*, *Caulyflowers*, &c. is uſually made in *February* or *March*, and after ſeveral manners.

Some preſcribe the making of it, by laying of hot Stable-dung that hath lain in a heap, mixing the neweſt with the old, and laying it about four foot broad, the better to preſerve its warmth, three, four, or five foot high, and as long as you have occaſion or materials. This Bed well trod (to excite the heat) is to be covered about four inches thick with very fine rich Mould, the top and ſides of the Bed being firſt edged round with Board or Bands of twiſted Hay or Straw, to keep up the Mould, and keep in the heat: thus muſt it lie until it hath paſſed its greateſt heat, which you may prove by your finger, for it ought to be but warm, not hot. In caſe its heat leſſeneth at

any

any time, you may encreaſe it by applying new Dung to the ſides of your Bed, on this may you ſow your Seeds.

There muſt be ſome Frame arch-wiſe, or flat, over this hot Bed, that a covering of Mats or Straw Hurdles may be ſpread over it every Night and in cold days: make your covering ſo that it may as well keep out the Rain and Snow as the Wind.

But the beſt deſcription of a hot Bed, is that of Mr. *Evelin* in his late Philoſophical Diſcourſe of Earth, to this effect; Dig a Pit about four foot deep, of breadth and length as your occaſions require; wall this Pit on every ſide with Brick, or erect your Wall above the ground, or part above, and part under; then fill it with hot Dung from the Stable, and tread it well. In this place wooden Caſes of about a foot in depth bored full of auger-holes at the bottom; fill them with Earth rich and light, and add hot Dung between them; in which Caſes ſow your Seeds, and theſe Caſes and the Earth in them will be kept warm by this means during the whole Seaſon wherein a hot Bed is neceſſary. You may provide a ſhelter againſt Rain and Cold over the whole, if you pleaſe, and you may have Frames of Glaſs over ſome of your inſide Caſes where there is moſt need, others you may leave open as your Seeds require. By this means have you your Pit and Caſes every year ready to your hand, requiring only a ſupply of freſh Dung.

SECT.

SECT. V.

Of Miſcellaneous Experiments.

Often removing of Plants.

THE often removing of Flowers in their proper Seaſon preſerves their Colours, eſpecially their variegations; for long ſtanding in one Soyl cauſes any Plant to degenerate; partly, becauſe the Plant hath exhauſted the proper nouriſhment for it, out of that place where it hath ſtood ſo long, and partly becauſe the Soyl is apt to change the nature of the Plant, being exotick to it, as is uſually obſerved in *Beans*, *Wheat*, &c. ſown on the ſame ſort of Land, although not on the ſame parcel, is apt to degenerate. Therefore removing of Plants, and alteration of the Soil is a good way to improve them, ſeveral Eſculents grow the fairer, as *Cabbages* will not loave well in caſe the young Plants be not three or four times removed before the Spring. The ſame is obſerved in *Lettuce*, and ſeveral others. If they are removed into improved Earth every time, they will eat more tender and better.

To make Plants come late.

Flowers are more in eſteem when they come early, than when they come late: to make them early the means are generally known, but the retarding of their flowring, often removing and preventing the uſual excitements of the Sun and Air, will effect; for the diſturb-

ſturbing the Roots in the removal is a great hindrance to their attraction of nouriſhment, and it will be ſeveral days after the removal before new Fibres will ſhoot forth to gather new nouriſhment: and the ſtanding of a Plant prevents the digeſtion of the Sap by the heat of the Sun and Air. This is of great uſe in retarding the flowring of ſeveral Flowers, and alſo the growth of ſeveral Eſculents, as *Cauly-flowers*, &c.

Plants to defend from Cold and Sun.

It is uſual to defend ſeveral tender Plants from the Cold in the Winter to preſerve them, and to expoſe them to the Sun in ſuch Winter days that prove clear, which expoſure injureth the Plant more than the Cold. For the Sun-beams in froſty Weather, eſpecially if there be Snow on the ground, makes a Plant faint and ſick. As is obſerved in the Laurel, which if it grow againſt a *North* Wall, or in the Shade, although open to the ſevereſt Winds, yet retains its green Colour all the Winter; but if it ſtand in the Sun, it changeth yellow, only from that cauſe. The ſame is obſerved of ſeveral tender Plants that are uſually ſheltred from the Winds, and expoſed to the Sun, yet it is not improper to give Plants Air, and alſo Sun, in mild Weather, at any time of the Winter, which cannot hurt them.

Often cutting of Plants.

The cutting off of the Buds and Branches of Flowers, leaving only one, or two, or more, as the ſtrength of the root will bear, cauſeth it to yield the fairer Flowers than otherwiſe it would do: after the ſame manner if Herbs be often

often cut, they gather the more ſtrength, yield the fairer Leaf, and take better root, and endure the Winter the better. The cauſe is, that the Sap hath leſs to nouriſh, and that which is nouriſhed muſt therefore be the ſtronger; and the leſs the Sap is expended above, the more ſtrengtheas the root in the ground, as may be obſerved in moſt Trees that are lopped. And then do they afterwards iſſue forth the faireſt Branches; ſome Plants uſually periſh in the Winter for want of being cut in the Summer precedent, and from the ſame cauſe, as *Wall-flowers, Thyme, Marjoram, &c.*

Plants to continue long. Some Plants are too apt to waſte their Sap in Flowers, and thereby ſhorten their lives, as *Gilly-flowers*, *Stock-Gilly-flowers*, and ſome others, which if their blowing ſhoots were nipt off, they would gather ſtrength and continue longer, for the waſte of the Sap, overmuch, makes the Plant feable, and uncapable of enduring any ſeverity of Winter or Summer, as is ſometimes obſerved in young Fruit-trees, that they bloſſom themſelves to death; and ſome I have known to grow themſelves to death; for the freer the Sap is in expending it ſelf in Branch and Bloſſom, the more tender is the Root, which becomes a prey to the Worm and Canker, as doth the Branch to the ſevere Air. The way to prevent which, is preſcribed in the laſt mentioned Experiment.

To meliorate Plants It is obſerved that all Herbs wax ſweeter, both in ſmell and taſte, if after often cutting you take the latter Sprouts, becauſe the Sap is the

the longer digeſted, and the root the ſtronger. The ſame is obſerved of Eſculents, the young Buds or Sprouts of old Roots eat more tender than the firſt Cuttings.

My Lord *Bacon* ſeem'd to approve of the opinion that *Onions* wax greater, if they be taken out of the Earth, and laid a drying twenty days, and then ſet again. And the more, if the outmoſt Pill be taken off all over, but mentions not at what time of its growth this is beſt to be done; however it is a ſufficient encouragement for *Gardeners* to take up the *Onions*, where they caſually come up too thick, and plant them in thinner places. Several Plants are ſo removed, as *Turnips*, *Lettuce*, &c. and are the fairer, therefore this Obſervation may be of uſe. *Onions large.*

Sift Aſhes, or Quick-lime beaten ſmall, about any Plant, and it will preſerve it from Snails or Worms; by reaſon their naked Bodies cannot endure the ſharpneſs of the Salt of the Aſhes or Lime. So if you water the ground with the Water wherein Lime or Aſhes have been ſteeped, the Worms will ſoon leave the ground, where the Water gets into their holes, from the ſame cauſe. You may alſo in a Summer Evening (after Rain) with a Candle draw the Worms as they lie on the ground, and put them in a Pail, and diſpoſe of them as you think fit; but you muſt tread ſoft, for the leaſt motion of the ground maketh them retire into the ground. Thus in two or three moiſt Evenings may you clear a whole Border *To preſerve Plants from Snails and Worms.*

of the greater Worms which are moſt hurtful.

Snails and Worms are all of them of an Hermaphroditical nature, and are all Breeders, and when they couple are eaſily deſtroyed, eſpecially the Snails who couple from the Spring until Midſummer and after. And lay their Eggs in the ground, you will find them with their Bodies buried in the warm duſt, and only their Shells above the ground; when you take them out, you muſt rake out their Eggs and deſtroy them, for otherwiſe they will lye there until they have ſtrength to travel, and then, ſome in the ſame year, others in the Spring following, you will have them diſperſed amongſt your tender Plants, and your Wall-trees, where after a ſhower you may pick them off.

To know good Seeds. If you doubt of the goodneſs of your Seeds, take ſome of them and put them in fair Water, and ſet them in a gentle heat twenty four hours, and if they are good they will ſprout, elſe not. Alſo you may waſh your Seeds in Water, and the dead and light will ſwim, and the good and heavy will ſink; but they muſt be all throughly immerged, elſe you may be deceived.

To defend Plants from Froſt. Secure the Root as well as you can from the Froſt; for if you defend that, the Branch ſeldom ſuffers, but if the Root be not ſecured, although the Branch be never ſo well defended, it will periſh. Therefore earth up the Roots as well as you can, and place any ordinary

dinary defence about the ſides of the Plant, and no Froſt will hurt it, (unleſs it be your tender Plants that are for the Conſervatory.) Thus may *Gilly-flowers*, *Wall-flowers*, *Stock-Gilly-flowers*, *Artichoaks*, &c. be preſerved.

Set tender Plants dry.

Some Plants, if the Roots ſtand dry, the Froſts rarely hurt them; which if moiſt, they are uſually deſtroyed, as *Roſemary*, *Sage*, *Wall-flowers*, &c. Either of theſe will grow on a Wall, and endure the ſevereſt Colds, but if they ſtand in a moiſt ground, although the Branches be never ſo well defended, they are apt to be deſtroyed with great Froſts. The cauſe is, that Water or moiſture ſtagnating about any Plant, and a Froſt following, is apt to mortifie it, when a Froſt ſhall ſcarce injure a dry Plant. It is the ſame with young and tender Fruits, a froſty night after a wet day deſtroys more Fruits, than ten dry Froſts can do.

To defend your Plants from Ants.

If you lay Saw-duſt about any Plant, it will defend it from the buſie Ants, who cannot eaſily paſs over the Saw-duſt, becauſe it is ſmall and looſe under them, that they cannot have any ſure footing, and ſo by that means are forced to ſteer their courſe another way. Thus may you defend your Wall-trees from Ants, by laying Saw-duſt about the Roots of them.

Some anoint the ſtems of their Trees with Tar, to prevent the Ants from aſcending them, but then it is beſt to bind Paper about the ſtems, and anoint the Paper, for Tar is apt to injure the Bark of your Tree.

Alſo you may bind about the ſtem of the Tree, Wool about four fingers breadth, which will puzzle the Ants to find a way over, or through it: be ſure to leave the Wool rough, that they may not find a way over the threds you bind it withal.

Moſs to deſtroy. Many of your Flower-trees will in ſome ſorts of Land, by long ſtanding, become moſſy, which not only defaceth but very much injureth the Tree, and it is a ſign the Tree diſlikes the ground it ſtands in. To prevent the growing of it, and the encreaſing of it whilſt it is yet but newly infected, you muſt remove your Tree into better ground more natural to it, or in caſe you are willing to have it ſtand in the ſame place where now it is, then you muſt take it up, and alter the ground, and enrich it as it ought to be, and then you may replant the Tree in the ſame place. And as the Tree thrives and encreaſeth in ſhoots, ſo the Moſs will decline, the Sap being waſted and expended more liberally another way.

But if the Moſs hath long continued on the Tree, your beſt way is after Rain that the Moſs be wet and will eaſily come off, to ſcrape it off with a Knife of Bone or Wood, for in dry Weather it will not come off ſo well.

Moſs a great annoyance to Trees and Ground. Moſs is a very great annoyance to Trees, and to the ground it ſelf, and is a manifeſt ſign of a defect of the more nouriſhing Juyce that is in fruitful Plants or Soyl; it is a ſpontaneous excreſcence, as many other Vegetables are, which made the learned Philoſo-

pher

pher *Van Helmont* ſay, that its Seed diſtilled from the Heavens, which is no more than if he ſhould have ſaid, that it proceeded from the natural inclination of the matter on which it grew, animated by the Cœleſtial Influences, which gave it Life, but the matter on which it grew gave it form, it varying according to the diverſity of the matter, from whence it receives its nouriſhment; ſome Moſs being hard, ſome ſoft, ſome white, others green. There is alſo ſweet Moſs that grows on *Apple-Trees*, and *Poplar-Trees*, and the Moſs of the *Larix-Tree* is ſweet in the burning. And although all theſe Moſſes are mere excreſcenſes, yet do they bear Seed and encreaſe, as hath lately been diſcovered by a learned Vertuoſi, who by the help of a Microſcope hath obſerved the Seed Cods or Seed Veſſels of Moſs to contain Seeds in them no leſs wonderful for the greatneſs of number than the ſmalneſs of bulk, which Seed Veſſels when ripe, he preſſing them pretty hard, found that there was a ſmall duſt went out of them, which ſeemed to vaniſh into the Air: preſſing and ſqueezing others of them upon a black plate, and examining the powder with a Microſcope, he found it to be a great heap of exceeding ſmall Seeds, globular and pretty tranſparent, ninety thouſand whereof extended, in length take up no more room than the length of one ſingle Barley-corn, or a quarter of an Inch: and twelve millions of the ſame Seeds laid quadrangularly, cover no more of a ſurperficies than one ſquare

Hooks Lampas.

Inch. And 1382400000 weighing only one grain. Eighty of theſe ſuperficies of Seeds make but the thickneſs of a piece of fine Paper, ſo that they be laid in a trigonal order, as moſt round bodies uſually place themſelves, that is, the round part of the Seed bearing on the concave diſtance, between the Seeds in the neather laying. For the truth of which Obſervations and Narration, the ſame Author appeals to your own ſenſe and reaſon, in caſe you make uſe of thoſe Artificial Helps he hath for that purpoſe. But his Concluſion is ſomewhat doubtful, that theſe Seeds being thus ſmall, may be carried in the Air from place to place, even to the tops of the higheſt Towers, or places remote, and be there ſown, from whence he ſuppoſeth proceeds the growth of Moſs, and doth not conſider that theſe Seeds being globular and tranſparent, (an Argument of their ſolidity and weightineſs) are as uncapable of being drawn up into the Air, and carried far, as the Seeds of *Peaſe*, *Radiſh*, *Purſlain*, *Thyme*, *Marjoram*, &c. For their ſmalneſs is rather an impediment to their Tranſportation than a help, and we find that ſuch Seeds that have a Down or Hair with them, are more uſually carried away with the moving Air, as thoſe of *Thiſtles*, *Lettuce*, *Carrots*, &c. than thoſe that are more ſolid and naked. Nor needeth there any ſuch help as that of Seed, to beget Moſs, for it may as well naturally proceed from any place prone for it, as Plants of greater bulk, it being not unuſual for

Oak,

Oak, *Beech*, *Holly*, *Birch*, and ſuch like, to grow plentifully out of the ground, where other Trees of another kind have been lately felled from a natural inclination of the Earth, and not from Seeds brought thither by the Air; the Seeds of *Oak*, *Beech*, and *Holly*, being too big for that purpoſe. The ſame may be obſerved in ground inclinable to *Broom*, which being throughly eradicated and taken away, and the ground plowed, ſown and cleanſed for ſeveral Years, yet laid up for ſome time will naturally yield *Broom*: yet thoſe Seeds uncapable of being carried in the Air. Alſo if that be true, that all Plants are procured of Seed, it may be queſtion'd how ſo great a quantity of the *Eryſimum* or *Irio* ſhould be ſown in the Ruines, after the late great Conflagration in *London*, where it was obſerved, that more of it grew there, than was known to be in all *Europe* beſides. This plentiful encreaſe of this Plant, which is not a denizen in *England*, and obſerved not to grow plentifully any where but at *Naples*, and that in the time of *Fabius Colonna*, could not well be produced of Seed, unleſs you will imagine that the Seeds of moſt Plants paſs with the Air over Sea and Land: But the great variety of ſpontaneous productions of the Earth in different years, different ſeaſons, and different ways of tilling the Earth, and its various Generations alſo of Inſects and ſmall Animals, (although theſe alſo may be raiſed of Seed and by propagation) is enough to convince the Intelligent, that Moſs

Evelin's Philo. Diſcourſe of Earth.

may be a natural ſpontaneous production or excreſcence out of Trees, Plants, Soyl, or any thing elſe capable to bear it, and that it may be occaſioned by the defect of a liberal expence of the Sap or Juyces another way.

Moles to deſtroy. Beſides the ordinary ways of killing *Moles* with Traps, you may in the Spring of the year, when they are moſt buſie and in their Work, caſt them alive out with a Paddle-ſtaff made for that purpoſe, by ſtanding very ſtill whilſt they work, for the leaſt motion of the ground diſturbs them, they having the want of their ſight ſupplied in their hearing and feeling. They do much miſchief in a *Garden*, and the ſetting of Traps or digging them out doth alſo prejudice your *Garden*; therefore the beſt way is, as ſoon as you perceive that they have made way into your *Garden*, and that they are retired (as in the latter part of the day they uſually do) into the adjacent grounds where they lye more quiet and out of fear, open their common paſſages, and ſmoak them well with Brimſtone, Roſin, Pitch, or ſuch like combuſtible matter, with *Onions*, *Garlick*, or ſuch like mixed with it, and cloſe up the holes or paſſages. This will deter them from your *Garden*, as I have tryed, and make them take to ſome other place, or you may take a dead *Mole* and lay it in the haunt, and that will operate the ſame effect.

Caterpillars to deſtroy them. To prevent the encreaſes of *Caterpillars*, where you find any of their *Puckets* which adhere to the Twigs of Trees, in which they lay

lay their Eggs all the Winter, (as Silk Worms do in their Bags) take them off and burn them, for the approaching Sun in the Spring gives life to those pernicious Animals who multiply exceedingly.

But if the Year be dry and prone to the generation of Insects, these Vermine are apt to be bred in abundance on *Cabbages*, *Cauliflowers*, &c. which to prevent, there is nothing so effectual as watring, for in dripping Years they are not so apt to breed as in dry.

An ingenious way to destroy them.

To destroy *Caterpillars* on Trees, it is said, that if you make a Ring of Tar towards the bottom of your Tree, then hang a bag full of *Pismires* on the Tree, that they may easily get out, and when they cannot get down by reason of the Tar, rather than they will starve for hunger, they will eat up all the *Caterpillars*: which if true, it is like the falling upon *Scylla* to avoid *Charybdis*.

Running of Colours.

Several sorts of Flowers are apt to turn white by long standing, or removing into bad ground, as red and purple *Primroses*, *Blew Violets*, *Sweet Williams*, *Gilliflowers*, &c. which proceedeth from scarcity of nourishment, there requiring good nourishment to maintain the dark Colours; as in Tulips, the best and lightest Colours are preserved by the more barren Earth, when a rich Soil turneth them to a plain dark Colour. But always observe, that change of Soyl preserves variety of Colours, so that it be to the degrees of fatter or leaner, as you would have your Flowers incline to darker or lighter Colours. It

Of the variety of Colours in Flowers.

It is obſerved that there is more of white than of any other Colour in Flowers, and leaſt of green, that being the general Colour, although in different ſhades, of all leaves of Plants, except ſome few Rarities that are red or white leaved, as red *Sage*, white *Marjoram*, *Amaranthus*, and ſome variegated Plants. In Flowers from white there are all ſorts of ſhades, to the yellow, ſcarlet, and deepeſt red, and to the ſky-colour and deepeſt blew, with variety of mixtures: It is very rare to ſee a Plant green, yet there are ſuch, as the *Roſe Plantain*, being only a Tuft of green Leaves, and the green *Primroſe* hath perfectly green Leaves in form of a Flower, but mix'd with purple or white Leaves. The common *Parrot Tulip* hath a mixture of green in the Flower, but it ſeems to be an imperfection in it, yet it conſtantly bloſſoms alike. Black is not unuſually found in the bottoms of *Tulips* and *Anemones*, but no Flower is known to have a black Leaf, ſave only the *Bull Iris*.

Of Sympathy and Antipathy of Plants.

There is a ſympathy and antipathy in Plants. And many fabulous traditions there are concerning them: but this is certainly obſerved, that ſome Trees will not thrive under the ſhade or drip of another, as the drip of a Walnut-Tree, and of a Cherry-Tree, are injurious to other Trees, becauſe the Leaf is bitter, and the drip deſtroyeth ſuch Trees or Plants that are under it. The like doth the drip of the Leaves of the *Artichoak*, and of *Hemp*, which deſtroyeth all other Vegetables near it, thoſe grounds being free

free from Weeds where they grow, from that cauſe. Some Plants will not thrive near others, becauſe they draw alike nouriſhment, and ſo rob or deprive one another, as Strawberries and Flowers with Fibrous Roots, will not thrive together; but Plants that draw contrary nouriſhment, will proſper very well near together, as *Rue* and *Lettuce* together, *Onions* and *Savory*, or *Lettuce*, or *Purſlain*, will grow very near and kindly together.

Perception in Plants.

There are very ſtrange Natures in ſeveral Plants, that are not by every one obſerved, which is a kind of preception in them, tending themſelves to that which nouriſheth and preſerves them, and eſchewing and avoiding that which injureth them. As a *Cucumber* is obſerved to grow towards Water, more than otherwiſe it would do in caſe no Water were placed near it: We may conſtantly obſerve the natural inclination of the *Hop*, the *French Bean* or *Kidney Bean*, and the *Periploca*, to a *Pole* or *Stick*, and how they twiſt about them, and how ill they thrive without ſuch Helps. It is certain that they have ſome perception of ſuch Pole, for you ſhall eaſily preceive their tender Buds to bend towards it, and at the leaſt touch of it to twiſt about it. After the ſame manner doth the *Indian Jaſſemine* or *Mexican Creeper*, and the *Ivy*, tend towards a Wall or Tree, and adhere to it, with love and delight. Several Fruit-Trees alſo will flouriſh better againſt a Wall than ſingle, not becauſe of the warmth or ſupport only, but their affection

to

to a Wall; as the *Curran*-Tree will grow much fairer and bear better Fruit againſt a Wall than any other way ſupported, although on the North-ſide of a Wall; the like is obſerved of ſome other Fruits, as *Plumbs*, *Filberds*, &c. The Roots of ſome Trees will run far towards any rich, fat, or moiſt place, it exciting ſuch Roots which have a natural perception, which way the beſt nouriſhment is to be obtained. Several Plants will alſo avoid that which they delight not in, as moſt Trees yield or recede from others that ſhade them, and many Plants planted near a Wall or other Fence, decline it, and lean towards the more open Air, be it towards what Coaſt it will. The turning of a Flower towards the Sun, or opening when the Sun appears, may be cauſed from the warmth it receives from it, and the bloſſoming of the greater *Convolvulus* in the Evening, may be cauſed from cool moiſt Air at that time, the Flower being ſo tender, that it withereth at the next approach of the Sun. But the inclination of a Plant to, and averſion from any thing, muſt be cauſed from a perception in that Plant, of that in which it delights, or which it abhors.

Sea-

Seaſons of Sowing.

THE Seeds of ſome Plants proſper beſt when ſown as ſoon as they are ripe, as of *Auriculaes*, *Tulips*, *Anemones*, &c. Others if ſown before the Winter, as Kernels of Fruits. But moſt of the tender Seeds muſt be kept till the Spring, as the Seeds of *Melons*, *Cucumbers*, *Radiſhes*, *Gilliflowers*, &c. It is obſerved that the Seeds of *Angelica* falling of it ſelf, or careleſly ſown, when it is firſt ripe thrives well, which if kept and ſown in the Spring, with care as other Seeds uſually are, never grows; the reaſon may be, that it being a hot Seed, its vegetative Vertue may be expended by lying in dry or warm places, when otherways being in the Earth it may be preſerved till it ſprouts, which is uſually the next Rain; *Walnuts*, *Filberds*, &c. if planted before Winter, make ſome progreſs in their timely ſhoots, but are ſubject to receive injury from ſharp Froſts, and Vermin, which to prevent, they may be kept in Sand in ſome cold or damp place, till the ſeverity of the Cold be over: The ſame method may be uſed in the preſerving ſeveral other Seeds that are either apt to decay before the Spring, or ſubject to be devoured by Vermin.

Some plants thrive beſt, being removed from the places where firſt ſown, as *Colewort*s, *Cabbages*,

Cabbages, *Lettuce*, *Skirrets*, and ſo of Flowers, as the *Gilliflower*, *Stock-Gilliflower*, *Auricula*, *Anemone*, &c. Others like not to be removed, as *Carrots*, *Onions*, *Radiſh*, and of Flowers, *Poppyes*, *Larkes Heads*, *Lupines*, and ſeveral other Annual Flowers which muſt (if at all) be removed with care.

Caterpillars to prevent.

The Seeds of *Cabbages*, or *Cauliflowers* ſown in *Auguſt*, or ſo early, that they may be tranſplanted and well rooted before Winter; ſuch *Cabbages* or *Cauliflowers* are not ſo ſubject to Caterpillars, as thoſe that are ſown late before Winter or in the Spring; the reaſon may be, that thoſe ſown later being more young and tender, are more apt to breed thoſe Vermin; or at leaſt, are more eaſily devoured by them.

In what Weather to Sow.

As it is ſaid by Husbandmen, ſow Wheat in the Dirt, and Barley in the Duſt, ſo may we ſay of *Garden*-ſeeds, ſuch that are ſown in Autumn, as Wheat uſually is, may be ſown in moiſt Earth, a day or two or three after Rain, the Seeds will ſprout the ſooner, and be the better confirmed before Winter, but if ſown in the Spring, it is certainly the beſt way to ſow moſt ſorts of *Garden*-ſeeds as well as Barley in the dryeſt ſeaſons, as *Onions*, *Carrots*, *Peaſe*, *Parſley*, *Thyme*, &c. and moſt Flower-ſeeds, which being well covered, will by the coldneſs and moiſture of the Earth, ſwell and be ready to come up the next ſhower; but if they are ſown in moiſt Weather, or ſoon after a Rain in moiſt Ground, they are apt ſpeedily to ſhoot.

ſhoot. And in caſe dry Weather either from the Wind or Sun, which is not unuſual in the Spring, happen whilſt the Seeds are in their Milk or beginning to aſpire; it certainly kills ſuch of them that are not very well covered or defended, and then is the Seed blamed, as though the ſame were naught, which if ſown in the Duſt, and a ſhower happen in three or four days after, thoſe Seeds though never ſo meanly covered, rarely fail: Only here you may take notice, that ſuch Seeds that are apt to be devoured by Birds, as thoſe of *Cabbages*, *Turnips*, *Radiſhes*, &c. if they lie long before a ſhower come, or be watred by hand, have need of ſome defence from their devourers.

Of making and taking off of Off-ſets or Suckers.

Many ſorts of Trees and Flowers naturally afford Off-ſets or Suckers from their Roots, by which their kinds are propagated; ſome there are that afford them very plentifully, even to exceſs, as the *Dwarf Almond*, *Hypericum Frutex*, and ſeveral others; and ſome there are that rarely yield any, as the *Mezerion*, *Althea*, *Fruticoſa*, &c. It is therefore worthy of knowledge to underſtand, how to cauſe Trees that will not naturally afford ſuch Off-ſets, to emit them from their Roots, the way preſcribed is thus: Make bare the Roots of the plant of woody ſubſtance, and then make an inciſion on the upper ſide of the naked Root, as you do on the under ſide of a Branch which you intend to lay, make the inciſion from the Tree downwards, and put a ſmall ſtone or ſtick under the Lip, to keep the Cleft open, then cover the

the Root over about three Inches with good Mould, and as the Lip in a Branch that is laid, will ſend forth Fibrous Roots, ſo will this (as ingenious Planters affirm) ſend forth Branches, which with the Root out of which it ſprings, may be tranſplanted ſecurely.

Of propagating of Plants by Cuttings.

Some Plants there are, which are propagated or encreaſed by Cuttings, as moſt ſorts of *Garden*-Herbs, and ſome Trees, as *Evergreen Privett*, *Jaſſemines*, *Laurel*, *Woodbine*, &c. and ſome Flowers, as *Wall-Flowers*, *Periwinckles*, &c. The beſt time for encreaſing Herbs and tender Plants by this way, is in the Spring, and from that time till the Autumn, only obſerve, that if you ſet any ſlips or cuttings in hot or dry Weather, you muſt be careful to water and ſhade them; but woody Plants that bear Leaves ſhould be ſlipt or cut, and planted ſome time before they begin to ſhoot, as the *Woodbine* in the Autumn, and *Jaſſemines*, *Laurels*, &c. In the Spring, Plants propagated this way emit their Fibrous Roots at a joynt; therefore it is beſt to cut them off juſt at, or below a joynt, and they will take Root the ſooner, for ſo much Wood beyond the place of Rooting, is apt to rot and hinder the young Fibres.

Of Propagation by Circumpoſition.

If your Tree be ſo high and ſtubborn, that its Branches will not ſtoop to the ground, then it is convenient to raiſe the Earth to the Branch you intend to propagate, but firſt take off the Bark of the Sprigs or Branch as near as you can to the ſtem of the Tree, for the better ſupporting the weight of the Earth: If you

if you cannot conveniently place it ſo near the Trunk of the Tree, you may ſupport it with ſome Stake or the like, then take a Box, Basket, old Hat, Boot, or the like, and place it ſo, that the Branch may go through the middle of it, and that the diſbarked or cut place may be alſo in the middle, then prick the Bark on the upperſide of the Cùt with an Awl or ſuch like Tool, to cauſe the Branch more eaſily to emit its fibrous Roots; then fill the Veſſel with good Mould, and in dry Weather water it ſometimes: This Application is moſt proper to be done before the Sap begins to riſe, and the end of the Bark of the Branch you intend to take off, will before the Autumn be furniſhed with Roots enough to feed it, without the aſſiſtance of the old Tree; then ſaw or cut it off, and plant it as you deſire.

To blanch Lettuce.

Thoſe that delight in blanched Lettuce, may blanch them with expedition, by covering every Plant with a ſmall Earthen pot, and laying hot Soil upon them.

To blanch Succory.

It is thus preſcribed, Sow it in the Spring upon the Borders, and when it hath ſix Leaves, replant it in rich ground, about eighteen Inches diſtance each Plant from the other, paring them at the tops: When they are grown ſo large, as to cover the ground, tie them up in ſeveral places with long Straw, or raw Hemp, at ſeveral times as they grow fair, leaving the other to grow larger.

Or you may gently bind them, and take away the Earth on one ſide of each Plant, and couch it down gently, without bruiſing the Leaves, and ſo cover it with Earth, and it will become white in a little time,

without running to Seed: Couch them all one way, and then they will not hinder one another.

To blanch them for the Winter, it is thus preſcribed, At the firſt Froſts, tie them after the former way, about 8 days after, make a Trench about the height of your Plant, then pluck up your Plants and place them in this Trench, range them ſide by ſide a little ſhelving, as they may gently touch. Cover them with rotten Dung of the ſame Bed they were ſown in; you may make Trench after Trench till you have finiſhed: Then cover the whole Bed four Fingers thick with hot Dung from the Stable, and in a ſhort time they will be blanched.

To preſerve them from rotting, you may cover them with Mats placed aſlant to caſt off the great Rains.

Or you may take them into the Houſe and cover them with Sand in ſome Cellar, obſerving to place them with the tops downwards, that the Sand may not run in between the Leaves: let the Sand cover them 4 Fingers thick; when you take them up, ſhake them well with the Root upmoſt, that all the Sand may fall out from the Leaves.

To blanch Endive. Cover the Plants with reaſonable warm Dung, draw them out, at the firſt appearance of Froſt, then keep them in Sand in your Cellar: Or when they are grown to ſome reaſonable greatneſs, before they ſhoot out any Stalks for Seed, take them up, & the Roots being cut away, lay them to wither for three or four hours, and then bury them in Sand, ſo as none of them may lie one upon another, or touch one another, they will by this means change whitiſh, and thereby become very tender.

THE

THE GARDENERS Monthly Directions.

SHEWING

What is Neceſſary to be done throughout the Year,

IN

Sowing, Planting, and Propagating, the moſt valuable of the Shrubs, Flowers, Eſculents, and other Hortenſian Plants before Treated of.

AND

What Ornamental Trees and Flowers, are in their Prime in each MONTH.

LONDON:

Printed for *Tho. Dring*, at the *Harrow*, over againſt the *Inner Temple-gate* in *Fleetſtreet*. 1688.

THE PREFACE.

AT the first Publishing this small Treatise, it was not my intention to have added a Kalender; by reason that I had composed a large one for Husbandry in general, which was Printed at the end of my Systema Agriculturæ, *which conteyned many Directions to be Monthly observed in Horticulture, as well as in Husbandry: And also for that so compleat a* Kalendarium Hortense *was Published by Mr.* Evelin, *which hath not yet, nor is likely to be exceeded But when this little Tract of mine was the Second time Printed, by another Hand, in my absence, was added about a Sheet and a half to it, calling it,* The Gardeners Monthly Directions, *which was collected out of an old Piece of Husbandry, much of it not proper, and other part of it out of use: So that I was obliged to compose the following Kalendar, which could not be done without repeating some things that had been Published before; yet are there ma-*

ny neceſſary Directions which ought to be obſerved by the Curious, not elſewhere publiſhed. Therein is alſo an account of what beautiful and Ornamental Trees, Plants, and Flowers, ſhew themſelves in their Splendour, in each Month, that ſuch that delight in them, may take ſuch care that at no time their Gardens *may be without fitting Materials to adorn their Houſes or Garlands.*

The former Kalenders that are extant are long, and there is not much more to be ſaid on the ſame Subject: therefore you cannot expect this to be more large than you will find it. However to ſo ſmall a Treatiſe this minute Addition may ſuffice, until new Matter be diſcovered to make it larger.

Vale.

THE

THE GARDENERS Monthly Directions.

JANUARY.

THIS Month is generally the coldeſt Month in the year, and not ſeldom lock'd up with Froſts, or the *Gardens* as well as the Fields, covered with Snow, that little can be done in the *Garden*: And in caſe the Weather ſhould be ſo favourable (as ſometimes it happens) that the Earth is eaſily penetrable, yet is it not ſafe to ſow any manner of Seeds (except in hot Beds) leaſt a ſharp fit of Cold chill them in their Milk, that is, after they have ſwelled in the Earth and began to chit, as many Seeds are apt to do as ſoon as they are in the Ground, although ſome will endure the greateſt ſeverities of the coldeſt Winters (if deep enough) as Parſley-

ſeed, Corn-ſallet-ſeed, and ſometimes Purſlain-ſeed, and ſeveral others.

But in this Month may you plant your Fences, and ſome Flower-bearing-trees, as *Lilars*, *Roſes*, double bloſſom'd *Cherry*, *Woodbines*, and *Virgins-bower*, and alſo *Anemonies*, and *Ranunculus*'s, if the Weather be mild and the Ground open.

In hot beds now may be ſown *Cauly-flowers*, *Radiſh*, *Lettuce*, and other *Salletings* you are willing to have early.

Set Traps to deſtroy *Vermine*, for in froſty Weather they will eaſily be taken by a Bait, when the Froſt prevents them from other Food.

Preſerve your choice *Gilliflowers* from the cold Rains, and ſhake off the Snow from them.

Pick Snails out of the Creviſes in the Walls, and other cloſe places where they go for ſhelter.

Ornamental Plants and Flowers now in Seaſon.

Laurus, *Laurus trius*, *Mezerion*, the *Bay-tree*, gilded *Holly*, the ſeveral ſorts of *Roſemary*, ſtrip'd *Phyllirea*, *Glaſſenbury Thorn*, ſtrip'd *Periwinkles*, *Winter-Aconite* or *Wolfsbane*, black *Hellebar*, *Primroſes* of ſeveral ſorts, and the double *Oxſlips*, early *Winter-Hyacinth*.

February,

FEBRUARY.

NOW the Weather begins to alter, although ſometimes *January* be open and temperate, and this Month ſeverely cold, yet for the moſt part the inclining of the Sun to the Vernal Equinox, doth produce a moderation of the paſt colds, and encourage the ingenious *Gardener* to trim his Trees, and ſtir his Ground, mixing his rotten Dung in the digging thereof, for the ſetting and ſowing of *Beans, Peaſe, Carrots, Parſnips, Onions, Parſley, Spinage, Aſparagus, Anniſeeds, Corn-ſallet, Fennel.*

Which being now ſown in a fair and open ſeaſon, will come early, and proſper well.

Lay Branches of ſeveral Trees to take root, and plant out your *Cabbage* Plants to have them early.

Make your hot Bed for *Melons, Cucumbers*, &c.

Plant *Cowſlips, Oxſlips, Primroſes.*

Sow the Seeds of *Fraxinella, Alaternus, Larksheels, Marigolds.*

Ornamental Plants and Flowers now in Seaſon.

Laurus, Laurus-tinus, Mezereon, gilded *Holly*, gilded *Roſemary*, ſtrip'd *Phyllirea, Glaſſenbury Thorn, Periwinkles, Winter-Aconite, Anemones,*

mones, *Crocus*, early *Winter-Hyacinths*, bulbous *Violets*, *Hepatica*, *Persian Iris*, early *Daffodils*, *Primroses*, *Oxslips*.

MARCH.

THis Month produces the greateſt variety of Weather of any other in the whole year; that notwithſtanding the advancement of the Sun into the *Northern* Hemiſphere, which often produces temperate, and ſometimes warm Weather; yet the Winds that uſually blow from the *Northern* and *Eaſtern* Regions, with the coldneſs of the Earth, do ſo refrigerate the Air, that it is not ſafe to remove your tender Plants, nor ſow the Seeds of tender Herbs and Flowers, leaſt the nipping Froſts or Winds, and ſometimes Snows, deprive you of your expectation: Nevertheleſs in this Month are the greateſt part of your *Garden* Tillage, and more hardy flowering Ornaments to be removed down, or planted.

Continue ſtill digging your *Garden* Grounds, mixing therewith, or rather burying therein your rotten Dung. You may now make your hot Beds for *Melons* and *Cucumbers*, and alſo for *Amaranthus purpureus*, *Marvel* of *Peru*, the greater *Convolvulus*, and other choice *Exoticks*.

Sow *Beans*, *Peaſe*, *Carrots*, *Parſnips*, *Onions*, *Leeks*, *Parſley*, *Lettuce*, *Spinage*, *Aſparagus*, *Aniſeeds*,

niſeeds, Corn-ſallet, Fennel, Endive, Succory, Radiſh, Beets, Scorzonera, Sorrel, Buglos, Burrage, Chervil, Sellery, Purſlain, Turnips, Cabbages, Marigolds.

Plant *Skirrets, Garlick, Liquorice, Artichokes, Strawberries, Cabbage*-plants.

Slip and plant *Sage, Roſemary, Lavender, Thyme,* towards the end of the Month, if the Weather be mild; and then alſo may you remove *July* Flowers or *Carnations.*

Sow the Seeds of *Firrs, Pines, Bayes, Alaternus, Phillyrea, Cypreſs, Laurel,* &c.

Plant *Cowſlips, Oxſlips, Primroſes, Wall-flowers, Hepatica's, Auricula's, Gentianella, Jaſmines, Fraxinella.*

About the beginning of this Month may you ſet into the ground the roots of the *Marvail of Peru,* which you preſerved all the Winter.

Ornamental Plants and Flowers now in Seaſon.

Sweet-bryars, Periwinckles, Anemones, Crocus's, Hyacinths, Hepatica's, Perſian Iris, Daffodils, Primroſes, varieties of *Oxſlips,* and *Cowſlips, Crown Imperial, Fritilaryes, Precone-Tulyps, Deus Caninus, Wall-flowers, Violets, Junquils, Grape-flowers,* &c.

APRIL.

APRIL.

IN this Month your *Garden* appears in its greateſt Beauty, the Bloſſoms of the Fruit-trees prognoſticate the plenty of Fruits for all the ſucceeding Summer-Months, unleſs prevented by untimely Froſts, or Blights. The Bees now buz in every Corner of your *Garden*, to ſeek for Food: The Birds ſing in every Buſh, and the ſweet Nightingale tunes her warbling Notes in your ſolitary Walks, whileſt the other Birds are at their reſt. The Beaſts of the Woods look out into the Plains: And the Fiſhes of the Deep ſport themſelves in the ſhallow Waters. The Air is wholeſome, and the Earth pleaſant, beginning now to be cloathed with Nature's beſt Array, exceeding all Arts Glory. This is the time that whets the Wits of ſeveral Nations to prove their own Country to have been the *Garden* of *Eden*, or the *Terreſtial Paradiſe*, however it appears all the year beſides.

In caſe unſeaſonable Weather hinders not, the pleaſantneſs and ſalubrity of the Air, now tempts the ſound to the free enjoyment of it, rather than to enjoy the Pleaſures of *Bacchus* in a ſmoaky Corner.

The beginning of this Month uncover your *Aſparagus*-Beds, rake them fine as they muſt lye all the Summer, uncover your *Artichoaks*, and when they are a little ſhot out in Leaves, dreſs them, and with thoſe Suckers plant new Beds, if you have occaſion for them. Set

Set *French-beans, Peaſe, Haſtings,* and *Garden-beans,* for a ſecond Crop, *Cucumbers, Melons,* and ſow all ſorts of tender Seeds about the end of the Month, that cannot endure the Cold; you may now ſow *Roſemary, Hollihock-ſeed, Columbines, Larks-heels, Naſturtium Indicum, Poppies, Lupines,* and all ſuch Flowers as are to blow in the following Summer.

Now ſow *Turnips* to have them in the Summer, plant out your *Cauly-flowers*; and as yet you may plant *Cabbage* Plants.

All tender Winter-greens and Shrubs may now be ſafely removed and cut, as *Phyllirea, Myrtles, Jaſmines, Oleander, Cypreſs,* &c. you may yet tranſplant fibrous rooted Flowers, and ſet the Seeds of ſeveral Trees, as of the *Pine, Firr, Phyllirea, Alaternus,* &c. bring your choice Plants out of your Conſervatory, except the *Orange-tree,* which will hardly yet endure the Cold.

In the Evening after a ſhower gather up Worms and Snails.

Ornamental Plants and Flowers now in Seaſon.

Double bloſſom'd Cherry, Syringa's or *Pipe-trees, Perſian Jaſmine, Hypericum frutex, Dwarf-almonds, Sweet-bryars, Anemonyes, Ranuncula's, Auricula's, Crown-Imperial, Perſian-Lilly, Fritillary, Tulips, Jacinths, Muſcary, Star-flowers, Iris, Deus Caminus, Vernal Cyclamens, Ladies-ſlipper, Gentianella, Wall-flowers, Stock-Gilliflowers, Bell-flowers, Hepatica's, Narciſſus, Primroſes, Cowſlips, Peonyes, Arbor Indæ, Lilac, Gelder-Roſes, Laburnum.*

MAY.

MAY.

NOW are we entring the Summer, this Month ſometimes proving very warm, and the warmer it is the leſs welcome, overmuch heat ſo early ſcorching the Fruits of the Earth, diſappointing the *Gardener* of his hopeful Crop, unleſs by his great pains and induſtry he preſerves it by watring. And ſometimes on the contrary, cold and nipping Froſts either chils his tender Plants, or puts him to the trouble of ſecuring them, by the continuance of his Coverings. The long and pleaſant Mornings and Evenings extreamly invigorate the Natures of ſuch that ſoft Dormitories do not over much prevail with to decline their Enjoyments. He that delights not in Phyſick, let him now exerciſe himſelf in the *Garden*, and take the ſmell of the Earth, with the riſing Sun, than which to the vertuouſly inclined there is nothing more pleaſant; for now is Nature her ſelf full of Mirth, and the Senſes ſtored with Delights, and variety of Pleaſures.

There is now but little digging in a *Garden*, except for the ſowing of ſome very tender Plants, as *Sweet-Marjerome*, &c.

But now weeding is neceſſary, as well in your Walks, as amongſt your Herbs, Tillage, and Flowers.

You

You may yet plant and remove Winter-greens, and other tender Shrubs, preparing the Mould, and mixing it with Cow-dung, and may also sow *Sweet-Marjerom*, *Thyme*, *Gilliflowers*, and other Aromatick and tender Plants.

Sow *Purslain* and other Herbs to have them young and tender. Most of your housed and covered Plants will now live in the open Air; only *Melons* and early *Cucumbers* will prosper best under Glasses.

Sage, *Rosemary*, and several other woody Plants, thrive best slipt and planted in this Month, a little watred and shaded if there be occasion.

You may now remove into proper Beds, *Amaranthus*, *Mastich*, *Thyme*, *Snap-dragons*, and the young *Stock-gillyflowers*, at the full of the Moon, which it's said will make them the more double.

Such *Tulip* roots that are dry, may now be taken up.

Ornamental Plants and Flowers now in Season.

Laurus Cerasus, *Cytisus Maranthe*, or *Horned-tree Trefoil*, *Hypericum frutex*, *Oleaster*, *Shrub-night-shade*, *Woodbines*, most sorts of *Roses*, *Laburnum*, *Horse-chesnut*, *Lilac*, *Gelder-rose*, *Sena-tree*, *Rosemary*, *Pinks*, *Tulips*, *Columbines*, *Peonyes*, *Lilly conval*, *Iris*, *Anemones*, *Ranunculus*, *Cyclamen*, *Fraxinella*, *Gladiolus*, *Geranium*, *Jacinth*,

cinth, *Lillyes*, *Phalangium*, *Orchis*, *Cowſlips*, *Ladies-ſlipper*, *Stock-gilliflower*, *Star-flower*, *Bell-flowers*, great yellow *Fritillary*, *Starry-Jacinth* of *Peru*, *Aſphodels*, *Gentianella*, *Auricula's*, *Wall-flowers*, *Queens-Gilliflowers*, *Snapdragons*.

JUNE.

THE Sun is now in his moſt *Northern* Latitude, the Days at longeſt, the Mornings and Evenings the moſt pleaſant times for Recreation in the beautiful Avenues of your Ville; at other times of the day, Grotts, and ſhady Groves, requite your labour and expence in raiſing them, by the ſweet and cool refreſhments they afford, when the Sun's hot Aſpect would otherwiſe prove troubleſome. The plenty of cooling Fruits and Tillage now furniſh your Table, and tempt the curious Pallate to exchange a great part of its groſſer Food for *Garden* Dainties.

The beſt imployment in the *Garden*, now, is to prune and trim your Flowers and Trees, to inoculate *Roſes*, to lay *Gilliflowers*, and cut Herbs to diſtil and to dry.

Melons, *Cucumbers*, and ſeveral ſorts of new removed Trees and Flowers, now, expect to be watred.

Tulip roots, and other Bulbs that are dry, may now be taken up and houſed.

You may alſo take up the *Chalcedon Iris*, *Anemones*, and *Ranuncula's*. Alſo

Alſo now remove early *Cyclamens*, bulbous *Jacinths*, *Iris*, *Fritillaries*, *Crown-Imperial*, *Martagon*, and ſuch others that have done blowing.

Set *Saffron*, and plant *Roſemary*, but let it be a little defended from the Sun, and watred at the firſt, and plant Slips of *Myrtle*.

Gather Seeds of ſuch Flowers that blowed in the Spring, and are now ripe.

Ornamental Plants and Flowers now in Seaſon.

Laurus Ceraſus, *Roſes* of moſt ſorts, *Woodbines*, *Lime-tree*, *Indian-Fig*, *Fraxinella*, *Shrub-night-ſhade*, *Jaſmines*, *Spaniſh-broom*, *Martagons*, *Lillies*, *Molyes*, *Aſphodals*, *Phalangium*, *Iris*, *Corn-flag*, *Æſtival Cyclamens*, white *Hellebor*, great *Gentian*, *Bell-flowers*, *Campions*, *Queens-Gilliflowers*, *Pinks*, *Sweet-Johns*, *Sweet-Williams*, *Columbines*, *Snap-dragons*, *Poppies*, *Nigella*, leſſer *Convolvulus*, *Naſturtium Indicum*, *Carnations*, *Larks-heels*, *Sultan's Flower*, *Stock-Gilliflowers*, *Cornflag*, *Holly-hock*, *Muſcory*.

JULY.

THis *Northern* Hemiſphere is now warmed by the Sun's advance, by whoſe influence many choice and delicate Fruits become pleaſant and acceptable to the moſt curious Palates;

the fruitful Fields appear in their beſt Array, that the Countryman may now give a gueſs what Harveſt he is like to expect, Grotts and ſhady Groves, are more ſeaſonable to recreate your ſelf in than the open Air, unleſs it be late in the Evening, or early in the Morning, to ſuch that can afford time to take a Nap after Noon. *Garden* Fruits, and Tillage, may now be a part of your Table-Furniture, being a cooler Dyet than groſs Fleſh.

The Exerciſes in the *Garden* are now for the moſt part gathering in the Fruits of the Labour you beſtowed in the Winter and Spring Months. Now on the ground whence you have cleared your Peaſe, and other early Tillage, being ſlightly digged, may you ſow *Turnips*, *Cabbage*-ſeed; and alſo, if you pleaſe, Seeds for latter Salleting, and *Peaſe* to come late.

You may now lay *Gilliflowers*, and *Myrtles*, &c. inoculate *Roſes* and other Flower-bearing Trees.

Cut off the Stalks of ſuch Flowers that have done blowing, and cover their Roots with freſh Earth.

Snails that feed on your choice Wall-fruits, early in the Mornings may be taken off.

Slip Stocks, and other lignous Plants and Flowers, plant them, and water, and ſhade them, if need require.

Sow *Mezereon*-Berries, and *Anemones*.

Take up *Lillies*, *Martagons*, *Fritillarias*, and *Hyacinths*, when the ſtalks are dry, and remove them. Take up *Anemones*.

Ornamental

Ornamental Plants and Flowers now in Season.

Several ſorts of *Roſes*, *Woodbines*, *Lime-tree*, *Oleander*, *Laurus Indicus*, *Jaſmines*, *Virgins-bower*, *Periploca*, *Oranges*, *Amorum Plinii*, *Agnus Caſtus*, *Arbutus*, *Olive*, *Jucca*, *Molyes*, the ſmall yellow *Aſphodil*, *Cornflag*, *Æſtival Cyclamens*, great *Gentian*, *Bell-flowers*, *Campions*, *Queens-Gilliflowers*, *Gilliflowers*, *Snapdragons*, *Larks-heels*, *Indian Creſſes*, *Nigella*, leſſer *Convolvulus*, *Marvail of Peru*, *Scarlet-beans*, *Lupines*, *Scabious*, *Fraxinella*, *African Marigold*, *Holy-hock*, *Stock-Gilliflowers*, *Paſſion-flower*, *Cardinal's Flower*.

AUGUST.

THE Sun being now in its *Southern* declination the Air begins to cool, and it is become very pleaſant to walk after a Thunder-ſhower. Although the Beauties of the Fields and *Gardens* begin to fade, yet the profits now flow in: the Fields cloathed with Corn, ready for the Barn; the Orchards laden with all ſorts of Cider-fruits; the Avenues and Walls of your *Gardens*, now furniſh the moſt curious Palates with the moſt delicate Fruits; and the Kitchin-*Garden* the Table with variety of Tillage. Little is now to be done in a *Gar-*

den, beſides gathering in the Fruits of former Labours.

You may now ſow *Cabbage* and *Cauly-flower*-ſeed, for Winter Plants, and alſo *Lettuce*, *Spinage*, *Carrots*, *Onions*, *Corn-ſallet*, and *Marygolds*, to live over the Winter.

Sow *Turnips*.

Pull up your *Onions*, *Garlick*, *&c.* and gather your ripe Seeds.

Remove *Auricula's*, plant *Cowſlips*, *Oxſlips*, and *Primroſes*, *Campions*, *Gilliflowers*, *Hepatica's*, *Crown-Imperial*, *Perſian-Lillies*, *Fritillaries*, *Aſphodils*, *Spiderwort*, *Cholcicumbs*, and *Autumnal Crocus*, *Iris*, *Bulbous* and *Tuberoſe*, *Lilly of the Valley*, *Deus Caninus*, and ſeedling *Anemones*, and moſt other Flowers that have blown the Spring or Summer precedent.

Plant *Roſes*, *Woodbines*, and other Trees that are apt to bud before the Winter.

Plant *Saffron*, *Strawberries*, &c.

Remove your Winter-greens.

Ornamental Plants and Flowers now in Seaſon.

Myrtles, double bloſſomed *Pomegranate-tree*, *Althea fruticoſa*, *Spirea frutex*, *Monthly Roſes*, *Jaſmines*, *Virgins-bower*, *Maracoc*, *Sena-tree*, *Muſk-roſe*, *Oleander*, *Virginian Martagon*, *Indian Hyacinth*, or *Tuberoſe*, *Star-flower of Æthiopia*, the little hollow white *Aſphodil*, *Autumnal Cyclamen*, *Bellflowers*, *Champions*, *Gilliflowers*, *Hollyhocks*, *Globe-Thiſtle*, *Sultan's Flower*, *Amaranthus*,

ranthus, Larks-heels, Indian Creſſes, African Marigolds, Great Convolvulus, Marvail of *Peru, Everlaſting Peaſe, Lupines Cholcicum, French Marigold, Geranium Nocte Olens.*

SEPTEMBER.

THis Seaſon is the moſt pleaſant of all the Year for Air, it being generally of an even Temper, by night as well as by day: The Leaves as well as Fruits, now, are for the moſt part ripe, and ready to fall, which makes it the ſweeteſt time of all the Year, for Travelling, Walking, and ſuch like Champaign Exerciſes. This is one of the principal Months in the Year, wherein to employ your ſelf in the *Garden*: Now may you dig up your Flower Beds, whoſe Earth wants to be altered, renewed, or enriched, and moſt Trees and Flowers may be tranſplanted or removed, and be throughly fixed before the Winter, that the Froſts will not hurt them.

You may yet ſow *Turnips*, though they will hardly be large, unleſs the Autumn be mild; alſo you may ſow *Lettuce, Cabbages, Cauliflowers, Onions, Spinage, Parſnips*, &c. againſt the Spring.

Tranſplant your young *Cabbage* Plants, and *Cauliflower* Plants, that were ſown the laſt Month, it makes them ſhort and ſtrong: You may alſo plant *Artichoaks* and *Aſparagus*, but it's beſt in the Spring.

Plant moſt ſorts of bulbous rooted Flowers, as *Tulips*, *Daffodills*, *Cholcicums*, *Crocus*, &c.

Alſo *Peonyes*, *Iris*, *Chalcedon*, and *Tuberoſe* *Cowſlips*, *Oxſlips*, *Primroſes*, *Hepatica*, *Cyclamen*, *Violets*, and moſt other Fibrous Roots.

Take off the Layers of your Gilliflowers that have taken root, and plant them in their proper places, in Beds or in Pots.

Plant *Anemones* to have them early, ſow *Auricula* ſeeds, ſow ſome ſorts of hardy ſeeds, as *Tulips*, &c. that lie long in the ground.

The great *Gentian* muſt be planted in this Month, in rich Soil, and a warm place: The *Cardinal's* Flower may now be ſet in a Pot, that in the colder Weather it may be removed into your Green-houſe, or ſet deeper in the ground and ſheltred: Remove ſome of your tender Plants into your Conſervatory.

Ornamental Trees and Flowers.

Laurus Ceraſus, *Myrtles*, *Althea Fruticoſa*, *Amomum Plinii*, *Monthly Roſe*, *Double Virgins Bower*, *Muſk Roſe*, *Sena Tree*, *Sweet Moly of* Montpelier; The little *white Aſphodil*, *Cholcicums*, *Crocus Autumnatis*, *Autumnal Cyclamens*, *Champions*, *Hollyhocks*, *Amaranthus*, *Naſturtium Indicum*, *African Marigolds*, *Greater Convolvulus*, *Marvail of Peru*, *Stock-Gilliflowers*, *Jacynthus Tuberoſus*, *Gilliflowers*.

OCTOBER.

OCTOBER.

NOW moſt Trees and Plants ſhake off their Summer Garments, and prepare themſelves for the approaching Winter; ſome are hardy and retain their green Leaves in the ſevereſt Colds; others are ſo tender, that although they ſhed not their Leaves, yet require ſhelter from the Cold, which are now to be taken care of. There is more Pleaſure now in feeding on the Fruits of your Labour and Induſtry, than in viewing the Ruines and Decays that this Seaſon hath made amongſt Natures Glories. There is a time for all things, as well to pluck up, as to plant. This Month invites you to both, being the moſt ſeaſonable to plant young Trees that are not tender Exoticks, and to eradicate the old and decayed.

Carry Dung into your Kitchin *Garden*, and ſpread it, that it may rot, and the Rain waſh in the ſectile part of it before the Spring.

Plant out your *Cabbage* and *Colewort* Plants to ſtand all the Winter, and ſome of your *Cabbage*-plants, where they may remain in the Spring unremoved, and they will bring early *Cabbages*.

Cut off the withered Stalks of *Aſparagus* near the ground, and weed the Beds clean, and cover them with good rich dung not quite rotten, which will defend the Roots from violent Froſts,

and enrich the Bed, by the rains washing in its vertue.

Plant *Anemones*, *Ranuncula's*, *Peonyes*, *Iris Chalcedonca*, *Tulips*, and other fibrous and bulbous roots.

Remove *Holly-hocks*, *Stock-gilliflowers*, and other hardy Plants: sow *Alaternus* and *Phyllirea* seeds.

Cut and prune *Rose*-Trees, and other hardy Plants.

Now house your tender Plants.

Ornamental Trees and Flowers now in Season.

Arbutus or the *Strawberry*-Tree, *Myrtles*, strip'd *Phyllirea*, *Amomum Plinii*, Monthly-*Rose*, *Spanish Jasmine*, and the yellow *Indian-Jasmine*, *Violets*, *Crocus Autumnatis*, double *Colchicum*, *Cyclamen*, *Stock-gilliflowers*, *Marvel of Peru*, double *Virgins-bower*, *Primroses*, and scarlet *Oxslips*.

NOVEMBER.

IF continued Rains (which usually happen in this Month) prevent not, we may now feel a part of the sharp Cold the Winter brings; and gives us caution as well in the *Garden* as in the Fields to provide against it. Although the productions of a *Garden* are many more than those

those of the Field; yet are few Seeds sown in this or the next Month, although the Weather be open, by reason of the hazard they are exposed to, in case of a sudden and severe Frost: yet those that covet to have them early in the Market, or to please their Palates, will now sow Pease, and set Beans, and adventure the sharpness of the Winter against their profit or pleasure.

Now may you prepare Beds for the planting of *Artichoaks* and *Asparagus* in the Spring; and may also order the *Asparagus* Beds as was directed in *October*.

Cover well your *Artichoaks* with long Dung, to defend them against Frosts: the want whereof lost almost all the *Artichoaks* in *England*, in the hard Winter, 1683.

House and cover with Sand *Carrots*, *Turnips*, and *Parsnips*; and house *Cabbages*.

Dig up *Liquorice*.

Plant *Tulips*, and *Anemones*. Cover your tender Plants.

In open Weather you may remove hardy Trees that loose their Leaves before this time; *Roses* may also yet be removed, and likewise may *Lilac*, ordinary *Jasmine*, &c.

Peonyes, and some fibrous Roots, may now be planted.

Sow *Asparagus* Seeds.

Ornamental

Ornamental Trees and Flowers now in Season.

Arbutus, or the *Strawberry*-Tree, *Myrtle*, ſtrip'd *Phyllirea*, *Amomum Plinii*, gilded *Holly*, *Myrtles*, *Spaniſh* and *Indian Jaſmine*, *Violets*, *Primroſes*, and *Skarlet* Oxſlips, *Monthly-Roſe*, and the *Muſk-Roſe*.

DECEMBER.

ALthough this is the darkeſt Month of the year, *Phœbus* being in his moſt *Southern* Declination, yet it is ſeldom the coldeſt. However little can be done in the *Garden*, beſides cutting and pruning of Wall-trees, digging and dreſſing of ground againſt the Spring, and ſuch like preparatory Works abroad; the Evenings are long, which gives the Induſtrious opportunity to indulge themſelves by the fireſide, over a Glaſs of *Hearts-eaſe*; and the Studious leave to read what others have Wrote, that he may make what he finds there, and thinks fit, to be his own, when fairer and milder Weather too often invites him to partake of thoſe Pleaſures the *Garden* yields, to the neglect of his Study.

If the Weather be open and mild you may remove, or plant, moſt ſort of hardy Trees that ſhed their Leaves in Winter.

Set

Set *Beans*, and ſow *Peaſe*, to have them early. You may now ſet *Bay-berries*, *Laurel-berries*, &c.

You may yet plant *Anemone* and *Ranuncula* Roots.

Sow *Aſparagus*.

In froſty Weather may you deſtroy *Snails* in every Corner of your *Garden*, and behind the ſtems of Wall-trees.

Ornamental Trees and Flowers now in Seaſon.

Laurel, *Bays*, *Myrtles*, *Laurus tinus*, *Phyllirea*, plain coloured and ſtrip'd *Roſemary* of all ſorts, gilded *Box*, gilded *Holly*, *Glaſtenbury-thorn*, *Primroſes* of ſeveral Colours, *ſcarlet Oxſlip*, *black Hellebor*, *Snow-drops*, ſtrip'd *Periwinckle*, and all other Winter-greens, plain, gilded, and ſtrip'd, ſeem acceptable to the Curious at this Seaſon, when the Earth is lock'd up, that it cannot expoſe its more deſired Rarities, which in the ſucceeding year will every day begin to appear, as the Sun advanceth, and by its warm Rays ſets at liberty each Flower in its ſeaſon.

A

CATALOGUE

Of ſuch Houſed-Greens, Winter-Greens, Flowering-Shrubs, Flowering-Trees, Flowers, and other curious Plants, as well *Exotick* as *Engliſh*, that are to be Sold by Mr. *George Rickets*, Gardener, at the Hand in *Hogſden* without *Biſhopſgate*, *London*, the great Collector and Improver of the Beauties of a *Garden*.

Greens that are Houſed in the *Winter*.

ORanges and *Lemons*.
Myrtles of various ſorts.
The white and red *Oleander*.
The yellow *Indian Jaſmine*.
The *Spaniſh Jaſmine*.
The *Indian Jucca*.
Colutea Odorata.
Tree Houſleek.
Cytiſus lunatus.
Jacobea Marina, or *Sea-Ragwort*.
Gilded or ſtrip'd *Phyllyrea*.
Lentiſcus.
Indian Figg.

Marum

Marum Syriacum.
Amomum Plinii.

Flower-bearing-Trees.

Caſtanea Equina, or the *Horſe-Cheſtnut.*
Oleaſter.
Pardus (or *Pardalianches*) *Theophraſti.*
Laburnum Major.
Laburnum Minor.
Sena-Tree.
Sumach.
Caſſia.
Lilac, blew, white, and purple.
Pomegranate-flowers, double and ſingle.
Jaſmines, White, and *Virginian.*
Periploca.
Double Virgins-bower.
Virginian Climer.
Tree Paſſion-flower.
Paliurus, or *Chriſt's-thorn.*
Hungarian Clematis.
Orobus Venetus.
Gelder-Roſe.
Double bloſſom'd Cherry.
Mezerions, Red, Purple, White.
Dwarf-Almond.
Hypericum frutex.
Spirea frutex.
Cytiſus Secundus Cluſii.
Althea frutex, Red, White.
Syringa, White, Purple.
Perſian Jaſmine.
Woodbine, or *Honiſuckle*, White, *Italian*, Red, Scarlet.
Scorpion Sena.
Amigdala flore Africano.

Winter-Greens.

Alaternus.
Pyracantha.
Ilex.
Laurus tinus Major.
Laurus tinus Minor.
Spaniſh Broom.
Upright Savin.
Laurels.
Phyllirea auguſtifolia.
Bay-tree.
Cypreſs.
Norway Firr.
Scotch Firr.
Silver, or *flat Firr.*
Mountain Pine.
Pinaſter.
Cedar of *Libanus.*
Winter Jaſmine.

Other

Other Ornamental Trees.

Cornelian Cherry.
Oriental, and *Occidental Platanus.*
Abele.
Lime-Tree.

Flowers and choice Plants.

Cardinal's Flower, Scarlet, Blew.
Steeple Bellflower.
Scarlet Gnaphalion.
Double Scarlet Lychins.
White Rocket.
Purple Rocket.
Auricula's double of several sorts.
Auricula's stripd, great varieties.
Auricula's plain Colours.
Hepatica's Double, Blew, and Peach-colour.
Fraxinella, White, Red.
Peonyes, Double, White, Blush, and Purple.
Asphodil, Yellow, Red.
Geranium nacte Olens.
Martagons of several kinds.
Lillies of several kinds.
Iris bulbous } Great va-
Iris tuberous } rieties.
Hyacinthus tuberosus.
Jacinths many sorts.
Tulips great varieties.
Double and single *Anemones* many sorts.
Ranuncula's great varieties.
Carnations and *Gilliflowers* very many sorts.
Double *Colchicums.*
Fritillaries.
Ornithogalon's.
Leucoiums.
Narcissus, great varieties double and single.
Globe-Flower.
Crocus's many varieties.
Primroses many colours and sorts.
Oxslips several colours and sorts.
Polyanthos.
Gentianella.
Junquils.
Campanula's or *Bellflowers* with many others.

The same Mr. *Ricketts* can furnish you with all the best sorts of *Apples*, *Pears*, *Cherries*, *Plumbs*, *Apricocks*, *Peaches*, *Nectorines*, *Vines*, *Currants*, *Gooseberries*, and all other Fruits, Standards, or for the Wall: Of all which he hath great variety.

A CATALOGUE. OF SEEDS, PLANTS, &c.

Sold by *Edward Fuller*, at the Three *Crowns* and *Naked Boy* at *Strand-Bridge* near the *May-Pole*, *Theophilus Stacy*, at the *Rose* and *Crown* without *Bishopsgate*, and *Charles Blackwell*, at the *King's-Head* near *Fetter-Lane*-end in *Holborn*, London.

Seeds of Roots.

Strasburgh Onion-Seed.
Red *Spanish* Onion.
White *Spanish* Onion.
English Onion.
London Leek.
French Leek.
Orange Carrot.
Red Carrot.
Swelling Parsnap.
Long Turnep.
Round Turnep.
Yellow Turnep.
Skirret.
Scorzonera.
Saffify.

Po-

Potatoes.
Shallots.
Garlick. Rocum Bolis.

Sallad Seeds.

London Radiſh.
Sandwich Radiſh.
Black *Spaniſh* Radiſh.
White *Spaniſh* Radiſh.
Cabbage Lettuce.
Lombard Lettuce.
Roman Lettuce.
Arabian Lettuce.
Savoy Lettuce.
Sileſia Lettuce.
Roſe Lettuce.
Red Lettuce.
Curl'd Lettuce.
Round Spinage.
Prickly Spinage.
Berry-bearing Orach.
White Beet. Red Beet.
Roman Beet.
Curl'd Endive.
Italian Seleree.
Italian Fennel.
Sampier.
Rocket.
Spaniſh Rocket.
Rampion.
Harts-horn.
French Sorrel.
Candy Sorrel.
Cardoon.
Indian Creſſes.
Garden Creſſes.
Broad-leav'd Creſſes.
Curl'd Creſſes.
Chervile.
Sweet Chervile.
Purſlane.
Golden Purſlane.
Parſley.
Curl'd Parſley.
Aliſander.
Corn-Sallad.
Dutch Aſparagus.
Colly-Flower.
Engliſh Cabbage.
Dutch Cabbage.
Ruſſia Cabbage.
Red Cabbage.
Colewort.
Curl'd Colewort.
Sheerwort.
French Choux.
Dutch Savoy.
Coli-Rapi.
Engliſh Melon.
French Melon.
Spaniſh Melon.
Long Cucumber.
Short Cucumber.
Prickly Cucumber.
Pompion.

Gourd

Gourd.
Mekin.

Pot-Herb Seeds.

Endive.
Succory.
Borage.
Bugloſs.
Burnet.
Bloudwort.
Clary.
Sorrel.
Marygold.
Pot-Marjorum.
Landebeef.
Summer-Savory.
Columbine.
Tanſie.
Nepp.
French Mallows.
Orach.

Sweet-Herb Seeds.

Thyme.
Hyſſop.
Winter-Savory.
Sweet-Marjorum.
Sweet-Baſil.
Sweet-Maudlin.
Roſemary.
Lavender.
Baum.

Phyſical Seeds.

Cardus Benedictus.
Scurvy Graſs.
Angelica.
Lovage.
Smallage.
Tobacco.
Dill.
Common Fennel.
Sweet Fennel.
Caraway.
Cumin.
Aniſe.
Corriander.
Gromewell.
Henbane.
Plantain.
Nettle.
Fœnugreek.
Fleawort.
Rhubarb.
Bur-dock.
Elecampane.
Balſam.
White Poppy.
Cardamum.
Gourd.
Broom.
Piony.
Daucus.

Citrul.
Worm-Seed.
Wormwood.
Rue.
Oculus Christi.
Line or Flax.
Marshmallow.

Flower-Seeds.

Double July-Flower.
Stock July-Flower.
Queens July-Flower.
Wall-Flower.
White Wall-Flower.
Matted Pink.
Mountain Pink.
Double Columbine.
Virginian Columbine.
Double Larks-heel.
Upright Larks-heel.
Rose Larks-heel.
African Marygold.
French Marygold.
Snap-Dragon.
Candy Tuft.
Sweet Scabious.
Spanish Scabious.
London Pride.
Capsicum Indicum.
Venus Looking-Glass.
White *Venus* Looking-Glass.
Venus Navel-wort.
French Hony-suckle.
White *French* Hony-suckle.
Scarlet Lychnis.
Rose Campion.
Noli me Tangere.
Marvel of *Peru.*
Nasturtium Indicum.
Sweet Sultan.
Red Valerian.
White Valerian.
Greek Valerian.
Branch'd Sun-Flower
Canterbury Bell.
Flos Adonis.
Fox Tail.
Iron-colour Fox-glove.
Nigella Romana.
Urtica Romana.
Primrose Tree.
Belvidere.
Amaranthus Purpureus.
Amaranthus Coccineus.
Amaranthus Tricolor.
Princes Feather.
Green Amaranthus.
Love Apple.
Thorn Apple.
Double Poppey strip'd.
Double. Holyhock.

Lobel's

Lobel's Catch-fly.
Goats Rue.
Spaniſh Mallow-Tree.
Monks Hood.
Convulvulus Major.
Convulvulus Minor.
Bottles of all Colours.
Globe Thiſtle.
Great blew Lupines.
Small blew Lupines.
Yellow Lupines.
White Lupines.
Scarlet Beans.
Everlaſting Peaſe.
Snails and Caterpillars.
Horns and Hedghogs.
Tulip.
Anemone.
Auricula.
Polianthos.
Primroſe.
Senſible Plant.
Humble Plant.

Seeds of Ever-green and Flowring-Trees.

Cypreſs.
Silver Firr.
Norway Firr.
Scotch Firr.
Great Pine.
Pinaſter.
Phyllirea vera.
Alaternus.
Phyracantha.
Arbutus.
Horn-Beam.
Laurus Tinus.
Amomum Plinii.
Mezerian Berries.
Cedar Berries.
Holly Berries.
Laurel Berries.
Bay Berries.
Juniper Berries.
Yew Berries.
Mirtle Berries.
Ever-green Oak-Acorns.
Cork-Tree Acorns.
Lime-Tree Seed.
Sena Seed.
Althæa frutex Seed.
Laburnum Majus.
Laburnum Minus.
Spaniſh Brooni Seed.
Cheſnuts.
Acatia.
Almonds.

Sorts of Peaſe, Beans, &c.

Barns Hot-ſpur Peaſe.

Short Hot-ſpur Peaſe.
Long Hot-ſpur Peaſe.
Sandwich Peaſe.
Grey Rouncival Peaſe.
White Rouncival Peaſe.
Blew Rouncival Peaſe.
Green Rouncival Peaſe.
Maple Rouncival Peaſe.
Large white Sugar Peaſe.
Small white Sugar Peaſe.
Grey Sugar Peaſe.
White Roſe Peaſe.
Grey Roſe Peaſe.
Egg Peaſe.
Wing Peaſe.
Sickle Peaſe.
Windſor Beans.
Sandwich Beans.
White Kidney Beans.
Speckled Kidney Beans.
Canterbury Kidney Beans.
Lentils.

Seeds to improve Land.

Clover-Glaſs.
Hop-Glover Cleans'd.
Hop-Glover in the Husk.
Sain Foine.
La Lucern.
Spury.
French Furz.
Dantzick Flax.
Hemp-ſeed.
Rape-ſeed.
Muſtard-ſeed.
Canary-ſeed.

Flower Roots.

Ranuncula's, all ſorts.
Double Anemones, all ſorts.
French Anemones.
Tulips, all ſorts.
Double July-flower, all ſorts.
Auriculus, double ſtrip'd and plain.
Poliantho's, all ſorts.
Primroſes, all ſorts.
Iris, *Perſian Chalcedonian Dwarf*, &c.
Crown Imperial, Yellow, double and ſingle.
Fraxinella's purple and white Hepatica, double

double blue, & peach-colour, white, blue, and peach-colour ſingle.
Crocus's, all ſorts.
Narciſſus, all ſorts.
Hyacynthus Tuberioſus.
Junquils, double and ſingle Pyony's, Black, Red, purple & ſtrip'd.
Fritillaria, all ſorts.
Hellebore, white, black, and Chriſtmas.
Cholchicum, Chio, purple ſtrip'd, &c.
Gladiolus, all ſorts.
Cyclamen Vernum, and Autumnale.
Lillies, all ſorts.

Sorts of Choice Trees and Plants.

Oranges Strip'd and Hermophradite.
Lemons.
Citrons.
Pomgranats.
Mirtles, *Broad-Leav'd, Box-Leav'd, Orange-Leav'd, Birds-Neſt, Up-right* and *Double-flower'd.*
Two ſorts of up-right Mirtles.
The up-right Mirtle of *Portugal.*
The Broad-leav'd Mirtle of *Portugal.*
The Broad-leav'd Mirtle of *Spain.*
A Broad-leav'd Mirtle, the Leaves tipt with white like Silver.
Rhus Tirtifolia & Virginianum, the Mirtle Leav'd and Virginian Sumach.
Oleander, Red and White.
Phyllirea ſerrato folio, & Auguſto-folio, & foliis leviter ſerratis.
Alaternus, ſtrip'd with yellow and white.
Cytiſus, Lunatus, & Secundus Cluſii.
Amomum Plynii.
Hollys, ſtrip'd with yellow, with white and yellow Berries.
Arbutus.
Paliurus.

Olive-Tree.
Cedrus Libani.
Aloes Americana, five Sempervivum, *Aloes of* America.
Agnus Caſtus.
Arbor Judæ.
Platanus Orientalus, & Occidentalis.
Tragacantha.
Horſe-Cheſnut.
Jeſſamines, *Spaniſh* yellow, *Perſian* white, *&c.*
Ciſtus, all ſorts.
Geranium noctu Olens.
Jucca Peruana.
Night-ſhade variegated.
Woodbine variegated.
Althæa frutex, purple, white, *&c.*
Terebenthus.
Lentiſchus.
Laurus Tinus Latifolia.
Laurus Tinus Auguſtifolia.
Lauroceraſus, the Cherry-Bay.
The ſtrip'd Laurel.
Juniperus Hiſpanicus, the Juniper of *Spain.*
Chamela Tricoccos, or *Widdow-wail.*
Laurus Alexandrina, Hippogloſſum mas, the Horſe-tongue Bay.
Laurus Alexandrina, & Genuvina, the true Bay of *Alexandrina.*
Jacobæa Marina incana, *Sea Ragwort.*
Azedarach, the Bead-Tree.
Piracantha.
The Marracock of *Virginia*, Piſtatia Virginienſis Trifolia, the three leav'd *Virginian* Bladder-Nut.
Jaſminanum Virginianum, the *Virginian* Jaſmine.

With many other Sorts.

At which Places you may be likewiſe Furniſhed with Spades, Hoes, Reels, Lines, Sheers, Sythes, Wyre-Sieves, Watring-Pots, Baſs-Mats, Melon-Glaſſes, *&c. Proper for the Uſe of* Gardiners: *As alſo, With all ſorts of* Fruit-Trees, *and* Ever-greens; *and* Artichoke, Aſparagus, Liquorice, Caulyflowers, Cabbage, *and* Tarragon *Plants.*

An

An Alphabetical TABLE.

A.

Aconites, *vide* Wolfsbane
African Marigold 128
Alaternus 62
Gilded 68
Time to remove 76
Aliſanders 187
Almonds Dwarf 88
Althea Fruticoſa, vide Shrub Mallow
Amaranthus Purpureus 128
Common 131
Amomum Plinii 142
Anemones 106
Early 108 Late 109
Antipathy of Plants 234
Anterrhinum, vide Snapdragon
Apples of Love 131 *Aqua Celeſtis* 200
Arach 189
Arbours 33 *Arbutus* 64
Time to remove 76
Arbor Jude, vide Judas Tree
Arbor Vitæ 65
Time to remove 77
Artichoaks 153
Their ordering 154
Late 156
Artichokes of *Jeruſalem* 163
Aſſes Dung 208 Aſparagus 150
Their ordering 151

Asphodils 102
Auricula's 122
Blew Borage leaved 143
Aviary 57

B.

Balustium, vide Pomegranate
Balm 91
Balsam Apple 131
Banquetting-House, *vide* Pleasure-house
Bay-Tree 61
When and how to plant and remove 76
Rose-Bay 135
Basil 191
Batchelors button 131
Beans 170
Bean Trefoyl 89
Bears-ears, *vide* Auricula's
Bears-ears Sanicle 143
Bee-flowers 103
Beets 163
To keep long 164
Bell flowers 131
Bindweed 128
Blewbottles 131
Blood to mix with earth 203
Bloodwort 189
Bona Vista's 172
Bones to mix with earth 204
Double Virgins-bower 90
Boxtree 62
When and how to Plant 77
Gilded Box 68
Brick-walls, and their manner of building 19
Flower of *Bristol* 131
Brooklime 192
Spanish Broom 89
Bulbous-rooted Flowers 102

Bugloss 187
Burnet 191
Burrage 187

C.

CAbbage 175
To keep long 176
Calceolus Mariæ, *vide* Ladies-slipper
Camomil 191
Double 131
Campions *ib.*
Candy Tufts *ib.*
Caraways 189
Carrots 160
To keep long 161
Caſtanea Equina 73
Time to remove 77
Caterpillars to deſtroy 232
Caterpillars to prevent 238
Cauly-flowers 178
Caulworts 175, 178
Cedar 64
Time to remove 76
Celaſtrus 65
Time to remove 76
Chalky Land 9
Its improvement 12
Champignons 193
Cherry double flower'd 91
Chriſt's Thorn 74
Time to remove 77
Chards of Artichokes 157
Of Beets 164
Chervil 187
Chibbols 167
Ciſtus Mas 136
Ciſtus

Cistus Ledon
Clay Land 136
Its improvement 11
Clary
Coastmary 189
Colchicum, vide Meadow Saffron 191
Columbines 126
Convolvulus 128
Corn-sallad 186
Cornflags 102
Green Corn
Cortusa Matthioli, vide Bears Sanicle 192
Cowslips 124
Cranes Bill 131
Garden Cresses 188
Indian Cresses ib.
Water Cresses 192
Crocus 101
Crown Imperial 100
Cucumbers 183
Cutting of Plants often 223
Cyclamen, vide Sowbread
Cypress Tree
Time to remove 99
Cytisus, vide Bean trefoyl 76
Cytisus Lunatus 135

D.

Daffodils 98
Daisies double 131
Deers dung 208
Dill 189
Dittany 126
Dog-tooth'd Violet 103
Dog Fennel double 131
Dials 56

E.

EArth enriched 195
By mixtures 202
Earthen Walls 21
Elder embroidered 70
Elder Buds 193
Endive 187
Endive to blanch 242
Eſchalots 168
Eſculents 145
Eugh Tree 63
Time to remove 76
Exotick Plants 132
Experiments 222

F.

FEathers to mix with earth 203
Featherfew double 131
Fennel 189
Fennel Flower 131
Fences 19
Indian Fig 136
Fiſh to mix with Earth 203
Firr-Tree 63
Time to remove 76
Corn Flags 102
Fleſh to mix with Earth 203
Flowers their uſes 6
Flower de Luce 105
Flower of the Sun 131
Flower Trees 78
Flower Pots 56
Flowers of variety of Colours 234
Watring them 216

Fountains 43
Fox gloves 131
Fraxinella, vide Dittany
Fritillary 96

G.

Gardens of Pleasure 1
Their influence on the mind 2
Their original *ibid.*
Their use and excelency 3,4,5
Their Scituation 7
Necessary defence 8
Soil 9
Form 14
Contrivance 17
Garlick 167
Gelder Rose 82
Gentianella 126
Geranium 142
Gilliflowers 112
Late 116
To graff 117
To defend *ibid.*
Stock-Gilliflowers 118
Queen's-Gilliflowers 131
Gilded Plants 66
To encrease 69
Time to remove 77
Gladiolus, vide Cornflag
Glastenbury-Thorn 74
Time to remove 77
Gnat Flowers 103
Goats Dung 205
Grape Flowers 97

Grafs-Plots 17
Grafs-Walks 30
Grotto's 51
Groves their excellency 75

H.

HAir to mix with Earth 203
Haftings 173
Hellebor 125
Hepatica *ibid.*
Herbs fweet 189
Honeyfuckle 90
Holly hedge 26
Holly Tree 63
Gilded 67
Time to remove 77
Hollihocks 126
Hollow Root 131
Hoofs to mix with earth 203
Hop buds 192
Horns to mix with earth 203
Horfe-Chefnut 73
Time to remove 77
Horfe-dung 207
Hotfpurs 173
Hot beds 219
Humble Plant 130
Hyacinths 97
Tuberous 142
Hypericum frutex 91
Hyfop 191
Hooks *Lampaß* 228

I.

Jasſemines. 88
Their ſeveral ſorts ib.
Late 91
Jaſſemines Indian 135
Spaniſh ibid.
Ilex. 64
Time to remove 76
Improvement of Land 10
By labour only 195
Sweet Johns 117
Iris 104
Jucca 137
Judas-Tree 89
Junquils 99
Juniper-Tree 65

K.

Keiri, vide Wall-flowers
Kidney Beans 171

L.

Laburnum, vide Bean Trefoyl
Ladies Slipper 125
Ladies Smocks double 131
Lang de Beuf 189
Larkſpurs. 126
Yellow 189
Lavender 191
Lawrel 60
Gilded 67
Time to remove 77
Laurus Tinus 61
Laurus Indica 136
Leather to mix with Earth 205

Leeks

Leeks 168
Lemons 142
Lettuce 184
Lettuce to blanch 241
Leucoium, *vide* Bulbous-Violet, and Stock-Gilliflower
Lilac 87
Lillies 99
Gilded 68
Lilly of the Valley 124
Lime 216
Linn-Tree, *vide Tilia*
Liverwoort, *vide Hepatica*
Loamy Land 9
Lupines 129

M.

Malt duſt 269
Shrub Mallow 90
Maracoc 136
Marjoram 190
Marigolds 128
Marly Lands 10
Their improvement 11
Martagons 100
Marſh-Marigolds 131
Marvail of *Peru* 129
Marum Syriacum, or *African* Maſtick 143
Maſtick Thyme, *vide* Thyme
Sweet Maudlin 191
Melons 180
Mezerion 88
Milk to irrigate Plants withal 213
Mints 189
Moly 102
Moles to deſtroy 232

Monks-hood. 131
Moſs to deſtroy 228
Moſs a great annoyance of Trees and Ground *ib.*
Mounts 36
Moth Mullein 131
Mud of Ponds 209
Mugwort Gilded 69
Murc 210
Muſhrooms 193
How to obtain them *ib.*
Muſtard Seed 189
Musk Scabious 127
Muſcaries, *vide* Grape-flowers
Myrtles 133

N.

NArciſſus, *vide* Daffodils
Naſturtium Indicum, *vide* Creſſes
Navews 158
Neats dung 207
Nep 189
Nettle-tops 192
Nigella, *vide* Fennel Flower
Night Shade gilded 69
Noli me tangere 130
Nonſuch, *vide* Flower of *Briſtol*

O.

OBelisks 55
Oleander, *vide* Roſe-bay
Onions 166
To make large 225
Orange Tree 138
To order it 140
Ornithogalon, *vide* Star-flower

Orrach

Orrach 189
Of making and taking of Off-sets, and Succours 239

P.

Pales 23
Pallisades *ib.*
Parsley 188
Parsnips 161
Paliurus 74
Time to remove 86, 87
Roman Parsnip 163
Patience 187
Peach-Tree double flowered 91
Pease 170
Pease-tops 192
Pease everlasting 130
Pellitory double 131
Penny-royal 191
Peony 111
Perception in Plants 235
Periploca 90
Periwinkle gilded 68
Phalangium, vide Spiderwort
Philosophical Earth 196
Phylirea 61
Gilded 68
Time to remove 77
Pidgeons dung 208
Pines to remove 76
Pinks 117
Pilewort 131
Pipe-Tree, *vide* Lilac
Pipes of Elm 38

Of Lead 38
Of Earth 39
Plants to come late 222
To defend 223
To continue long 224
To meliorate *ibid.*
To propagate by cutting 240
To propagate by circumposition *ibid.*
Plants to defend from Ants 227
Platanus 71
Time to remove 77
Pleasure-houses 34
Pomegranate double blossom'd 87
Pumpeons 183
Potato's 163
Poppies 137
London-pride 137
Primroses 134
Princes Feather, *vide Common Amaranthus*
Purslain 181
Pyracantha 65
For a Hedge 26
Time to remove 77

Q.

Quick Fences 25

R.

Running of Colours 233
Radishes 164
Horse Radishes 165
Rampions } 189
Ramsons }
Ranunculus 110
Indian Reed 136

Removing of Plants often 222
Repoſitory for tender Plants 35
Rivers their pleaſure 40
Rockets 131
Roots Eſculent 158
Roſemary 64
Gilded 68
Time to remove 77
Roſes and their variety 79
Their ordering 83
Early Roſes 84
Late *ibid.*
Roſe-bay 135

S.

SAffron-flowers or Meadow-ſaffron 101
Sage 190
Sage of *Jeruſalem* 189
Sallad-herbs 184
To raiſe a Sallad in few hours 219
Salts 209
Saltpetre 213
Sandy Land 10
Its improvement. *ib.*
Savory 191
Sattin Flower 131
Saw-duſt 210
Satyrions 103
Scabious 131
Scallions 166
Sceleri 187
Scorſonera 162
Seaſons of Sowing 237
Seats in a Garden 33

Seeds, good, to know 226
Sena-Tree, its ſeveral kinds 89
Senſible Plant 130
Sheeps-dung 205
Sives 169
Scarlet Beans 130,171
Skins to mix with earth 203
Skirret 162
Smalledge 188
Snap-dragon 127
Snails to deſtroy 225
Snow-drop, *vide* Bulbous Violet
Soot to mix with earth 203
Sorrel 187
What Weather to ſow in 238
Sowbread 103
Spiderwort 102
Spinage 186
Spirea frutex 89
Springs 37, 38
Squaſhes 184
Star-flower of *Arabia* *ibid.*
Of *Æthiopia* *ibid.*
Star-flowers 98
Statues 54
Stock-gilliflowers 118
To make double 119
Free-ſtone-Crop 64
Time to remove 77
Stone-Walls, and their building 20
Stoves of ſeveral ſorts 141
Straw to mix with earth 219
Strawberries 189

Strawberry-Tree 64
Time to remove 77
Succory 187
Succors cutting off 239
Succors to blanch 247
Sugar Peaſe 173
Sultan's Flower, *vide* Musk Scabious
Sweetbriar 26
Swines dung 107
Sympathy of Plants 234
Syringa, *vide* Lilac

T.

TAnſie 191
Tarragon 188
Tender Plants to ſet them dry 227
Terrace-Walks 31
Globe-Thiſtles 131
Thorny Apple *ib.*
Thyme 190
Maſtick Thyme 146
Tillage encouraged *ibid.*
Its Objections anſwered 147
Tilia 72
Time to remove 77
Toad-flax 131 Tobacco 210
Trees for Ornament 59
For Shade 71
Trees bearing Flowers 78
Tuberous rooted Flowers 106
Turnips 158
To keep long 159
Tulips 92
How to order 93 Tulips early 94

V.

Bulbous-Violet 99
Violets 189
Virginian Silk 137
Urine to mix with Earth 203

W.

Walks round 15
Square 17
Of Gravel 28
Of Stone 27
Of Graſs 30
Terrace-Walks 31
Wall-flowers 118
Waters 37
Water-works 46
Fat Waters 211
Watring of Gardens *ibid.*
By Filtration 216
Watring-pots 217
To preſerve them 218
White thorn hedge 25
Sweet Williams 117
Winter-Greens 59
Rotten Wood to mix with Earth 210
Woodbinds, *vide* Honey-ſuckles
Wolfs-bane 131
Woollen Rags to mix with Earth 204
Worms to deſtroy 210, 225, 261

THE END.

The Mystery of HUSBANDRY DISCOVERED.

Treating of the several new and most Advantagious Ways of *Tilling, Planting, Sowing, Manuring, Ordering, Improving* of all sorts of Gardens, Orchards, Meadows, Pastures, Corn-Lands, Woods, and Coppices. As also of Fruits, Corn, Grain, Pulse, New-Hays, Cattle, Fowl, Beasts, Bees, Silk-Worms, Fish, *&c.*

With an Account of the several **Instruments** and **Engines** used in this Profession.

To which is added

Kalendarium Rusticum:

OR, THE

Husbandman's Monthly DIRECTIONS.

ALSO

The PROGNOSTICKS of Dearth, Scarcity, Plenty, Sickness, Heat, Cold, Frost, Snow, Winds, Rain, Hail, Thunder, *&c.*

AND

Dictionarium Rusticum:

OR, THE

Interpretation of Rustick Terms.

The whole Work being of great use and Advantage to all that delight in that most Noble Practise.

The Fourth Edition *carefully Corrected and Amended, with one whole Section added, and many large and useful Additions throughout the whole Work.*

By *J. Woolridge*, Gent. *in Fol.*

Vinetum Britannicum:

OR, A

Treatise of CIDER.

And other Wines and Drinks extracted from Fruits growing in this Kingdom. With the Method of Propagating all sorts of Vinous Fruit-Trees. And a Description of the new-invented Ingenio or Mill, for the more expeditious making of Cider. And also the right way of making Metheglin and Birch-Wine. To which is added, A Discourse teaching the best way of improving Bees. With Copper Plates. By J. Woolridge, *Gent.*

The Second Impression much Enlarged. *Octavo.*

THE

Devout Communicant,

Exemplified in his Behaviour before, at, and after the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper, practically suited to all the parts of that Solemn Ordinance.

The Sixth Edition much Corrected. *Twelves.*

The Whole Duty of a Christian:

Containing all things necessary, both as to what he is to know and do for the obtaining a happy Eternity: To which is added, more particular Directions how to prepare for a comfortable Death. Twelves.

All four Sold by *Thomas Dring*, at the Harrow over against the *Inner-Temple-Gate* in *Fleet-street.*